Clinical Guidelines on the Identification, Evaluation, and Treatment of Overweight and Obesity in Adults

The Evidence Report
NHLBI Obesity Education Initiative
Expert Panel on the Identification, Evaluation, and Treatment of Overweight and Obesity in Adults

F. Xavier Pi-Sunyer, M.D., M.P.H.
Chair of the Panel
Chief, Endocrinology, Diabetes, and Nutrition
Director, Obesity Research Center
St. Luke's/Roosevelt Hospital Center
Professor of Medicine
Columbia University College of Physicians and Surgeons
New York, NY

Diane M. Becker, Sc.D., M.P.H.
Director
Center for Health Promotion
Associate Professor
Department of Medicine
The Johns Hopkins University
Baltimore, MD

Claude Bouchard, Ph.D.
Professor of Exercise Physiology
Physical Activity Sciences Laboratory
Laval University
Sainte Foy, Quebec
CANADA

Richard A. Carleton, M.D.
Professor of Medicine
Brown University School of Medicine
Pawtucket, RI

Graham A. Colditz, M.D., Dr.P.H.
Associate Professor of Medicine
Harvard Medical School
Channing Laboratory
Boston, MA

William H. Dietz, M.D., Ph.D.
Director
Division of Nutrition and Physical Activity
National Center for Chronic Disease Prevention and Health Promotion
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention
Atlanta, GA

John P. Foreyt, Ph.D.
Professor of Medicine and Director
Nutrition Research Clinic
Baylor College of Medicine
Houston, TX

Robert J. Garrison, Ph.D.
Associate Professor
Department of Preventive Medicine
University of Tennessee, Memphis
Memphis, TN

Scott M. Grundy, M.D., Ph.D.
Director
Center for Human Nutrition
University of Texas
Southwestern Medical Center at Dallas
Dallas, TX

Barbara C. Hansen, Ph.D.
Professor of Physiology
Director of Obesity and Diabetes Research Center
University of Maryland School of Medicine
Baltimore, MD

Millicent Higgins, M.D.
Department of Epidemiology
School of Public Health
University of Michigan
Ann Arbor, MI
G. Terence Wilson, Ph.D.
*Oscar K. Buros Professor of Psychology
Director, Rutgers Eating Disorders Clinic
Piscataway, NJ

**Ex-Officio Members**

Clarice D. Brown, M.S.
*Project Manager
CODA Research, Inc.
Silver Spring, MD

Karen A. Donato, M.S., R.D.*
*Executive Director of the Panel Coordinator
NHLBI Obesity Education Initiative
National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute
Bethesda, MD

Nancy Ernst, Ph.D., R.D.*
*Nutrition Coordinator
Office of the Director
Division of Epidemiology and Clinical Applications
National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute
Bethesda, MD

D. Robin Hill, Ph.D.*
*Social Science Analyst
Behavioral Medicine Branch
Division of Epidemiology and Clinical Applications
National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute
Bethesda, MD

Michael J. Horan, M.D., Sc.M.*
*Director
Division of Heart and Vascular Diseases
National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute
Bethesda, MD

Van S. Hubbard, M.D., Ph.D.
*Director, NIH Division of Nutrition Research Coordination
Chief, Nutritional Sciences Branch
National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases
National Institutes of Health
Bethesda, MD

James P. Kiley, Ph.D.*
*Director
Airway Biology and Disease Program
Division of Lung Diseases
National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute
National Institutes of Health
Bethesda, MD

Eva Obarzanek, Ph.D., R.D., M.P.H.*
*Research Nutritionist
Prevention Scientific Research Group
Division of Epidemiology and Clinical Applications
National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute
National Institutes of Health
Bethesda, MD

**Consultant**

David Schriger, M.D., M.P.H., F.A.C.E.P.
*Associate Professor
UCLA Emergency Medicine Center
University of California at Los Angeles
School of Medicine
Los Angeles, CA

**San Antonio Cochrane Center**

Elaine Chiquette, Pharm.D.
*VA Cochrane Center at San Antonio
Audie L. Murphy Memorial Veterans Hospital
San Antonio, TX

* NHLBI Obesity Education Initiative Task Force Members
Cynthia Mulrow, M.D., M.Sc.
V.A. Cochrane Center at San Antonio
Audie L. Murphy Memorial Veterans Hospital
San Antonio, TX

Staff

Adrienne Blount, B.S.
R.O.W. Sciences, Inc.
Rockville, MD

Maureen Harris, M.S., R.D.
R.O.W. Sciences, Inc.
Rockville, MD

Anna Hodgson, M.A.
R.O.W. Sciences, Inc.
Rockville, MD

Pat Moriarty, M.Ed., R.D.
R.O.W. Sciences, Inc.
Rockville, MD

The panel acknowledges the assistance of Dr. Rashid Chotani, Johns Hopkins University; Dr. Robert Klesges, University of Memphis; Dr. Walter Pories, East Carolina University; Dr. Ivan Baines, NHLBI; Dr. Christine Kelly, NHLBI; Glen Bennett, NHLBI; Dr. Fred Heydrick, BioReview; Debbie Lurie, Prospect Associates; Estelle Schwalb, Prospect Associates; Lori McCray, R.O.W. Sciences, Inc.; and Niyati Pandya, R.O.W. Sciences, Inc.
## Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Foreword</td>
<td>vii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Executive Summary</td>
<td>xi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Introduction</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. Rationale for Guidelines Development</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. Objectives of the Guidelines</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. Guideline Development Methodology</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. Statement of Assumptions</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E. Intended Users of These Guidelines</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Overweight and Obesity: Background</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. Health and Economic Costs</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Prevalence and Time Trends</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Demographic Variations in Overweight and Obesity Prevalence</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Economic Costs of Overweight and Obesity</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. Prevention of Overweight and Obesity</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. Health Risks of Overweight and Obesity</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Morbidity</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Overweight/Obesity and Morbidity in Minority Populations</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Obesity and Mortality</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. Weight Loss and Mortality</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E. Environment</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. Genetic Influence in the Development of Overweight and Obesity</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Examination of Randomized Controlled Trial Evidence</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. Why Treat Overweight and Obesity?</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Blood Pressure</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Serum/Plasma Lipids and Lipoproteins</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Impaired Glucose Tolerance and Diabetes</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Decreases in Abdominal Fat with Weight Loss</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. What Treatments are Effective?</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Dietary Therapy</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Physical Activity</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Combined Therapy</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Behavior Therapy</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Pharmacotherapy</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Surgery</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Other Interventions for Overweight and Obesity Treatment</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Treatment Guidelines</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. Overview</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. Assessment and Classification of Overweight and Obesity</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Assessment of Overweight and Obesity</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Classification of Overweight and Obesity</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. Assessment of Risk Status</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. Evaluation and Treatment Strategy</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E. Exclusion from Weight Loss Therapy</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. Patient Motivation</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. Goals of Weight Loss and Management</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Weight Loss</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Weight Maintenance at Lower Weight</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Prevention of Further Weight Gain</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H. Strategies for Weight Loss and Weight Maintenance</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Dietary Therapy</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Physical Activity</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Behavior Therapy</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Combined Therapy</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Pharmacotherapy</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Surgery</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I. Smoking Cessation in the Overweight or Obese Patient</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J. Role of Health Professionals in Weight Loss Therapy</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Summary of Recommendations</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Future Research</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. Intervention Approaches</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. Causes and Mechanisms of Overweight and Obesity</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. Abdominal Fat, Body Weight and Disease Risk</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. Assessment Methods</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Appendices</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendix I.A.1 Guidelines Development Methodology</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendix I.A.2 Literature Review</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendix II Description of Evidence</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendix III Special Populations</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendix IV Obesity and Sleep Apnea</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendix V Body Mass Index Chart—How to Measure Obesity</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendix VI Practical Dietary Therapy Information</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendix VII Resource List</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendix VIII Glossary of Terms</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>List of Abbreviations</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reference List</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publication List</td>
<td>226</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
In 1995, the National Obesity Education Initiative of the National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute (NHLBI), in cooperation with the National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases (NIDDK), convened the first Expert Panel on the Identification, Evaluation, and Treatment of Overweight and Obesity in Adults to develop clinical practice guidelines for primary care practitioners.

The impetus for these guidelines was the recognition that the prevalence of overweight and obesity in the United States is increasing, and that practitioners need to be alerted to the accompanying health risks. According to the latest statistics from the third National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey, 97 million Americans are overweight or obese. Excess weight is often accompanied by high blood pressure, high blood cholesterol, type 2 diabetes, coronary heart disease, and other health problems. The total costs attributable to obesity-related disease approach $100 billion annually in the United States.

The panel used the principles of evidence-based medicine, including an evidence model and evidence categories. It was the first time a panel thoroughly examined the scientific evidence for risks associated with overweight and obesity, and their treatments, and developed clinical practice recommendations based on their conclusions.

The panel was headed by Dr. F. Xavier Pi-Sunyer, of St. Luke's/Roosevelt Hospital Center in New York City. He and the other 23 panel members methodically and critically examined a vast amount of published scientific evidence. The panel also obtained scientific input from approximately 115 outside reviewers. The result was The Clinical Guidelines on the Identification, Evaluation, and Treatment of Overweight and Obesity in Adults: The Evidence Report. Dr. David Schriger of the University of California at Los Angeles, who is a methodologist consultant in the area of evidence-based practice guidelines, and Dr. Elaine Chiquette of the San Antonio Cochrane Center in Texas, who developed the evidence tables, served as key advisors to the panel.

Evidence examined by the panel included: research on the relationship of overweight and obesity to high blood pressure, high blood cholesterol, type 2 diabetes, stroke, congestive heart failure, coronary heart disease, various cancers, osteoarthritis, and sleep apnea; risks associated with the distribution and amount of body fat; and various treatment strategies, including diet, physical activity, behavior therapy, pharmacotherapy, and surgery. The resulting guidelines document how different treatment strategies affect weight loss and how weight control affects the major risk factors for heart disease and stroke.

The guidelines have been reviewed and endorsed by many professional organizations. In fact, because of the associated risks between high blood pressure and high blood cholesterol and overweight and obesity, the document represents
the first clinical practice guidelines to be reviewed and endorsed by members of the coordinating committees of both the National Cholesterol Education Program and the National High Blood Pressure Education Program which comprise approximately 52 professional societies, government agencies, and consumer organizations. Two additional groups endorsing the guidelines are the North American Association for the Study of Obesity and the NIDDK National Task force on the Prevention and Treatment of Obesity.

The report, the evidence model and its accompanying evidence tables, and a body mass index calculator are available on the NHLBI website at the following location: http://www.nhlbi.nih.gov/nhlbi/cardio/obes/prof/guidels/ob_home.htm

An abbreviated version of the evidence report is being prepared and will be distributed to primary care physicians, nurses, registered dietitians and nutritionists, and other health care practitioners.

It is our hope that these clinical guidelines will not only help the health care practitioner understand the importance of weight management but also provide them with the tools to assess and treat their patients more effectively. Equally important, we hope that the guidelines lead to a greater public understanding of obesity and a greater appreciation for the persistent efforts of millions of people to lose weight.

Claude Lenfant, M.D.
Director
National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute
Evidence Report Endorsements

National Cholesterol Education Program (NCEP)
Coordinating Committee Member Organizations

Associate Member Coordinating Committee Organizations
Stanley Wallach, M.D., American College of Nutrition, Donald O. Fedder, Dr.P.H., M.P.H., Society for Public Health Education

Federal Agency Liaison Coordinating Committee Representatives
Yvonne L. Bronner, Sc.D., R.D., L.D., NHLBI Ad Hoc Committee on Minority Populations, Francis D. Chesley, M.D., Agency for Health Care Policy and Research, William H. Dietz, M.D., Ph.D., Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Thomas M. Lasater, Ph.D., Coordinating Committee for the Community Demonstration Studies, Alanna Moshfegh, M.S., R.D., Department of Agriculture, Col. Michael Parkinson, M.D., M.P.H., Department of Defense, Pamela Steele, M.D., Department of Veterans Affairs, Celia Hayes, M.P.H., R.D., Health Resources and Services Administration, Clifford Johnson, M.P.H., National Center for Health Statistics, Linda Meyers, Ph.D., Office of Disease Prevention and Health Promotion

National High Blood Pressure Education Program (NHBPEP)
Coordinating Committee Member Organizations

Federal Agency Liaison Coordinating Committee Representatives

NIDDK National Task Force on the Prevention and Treatment of Obesity

NORTH AMERICAN ASSOCIATION FOR THE STUDY OF OBESITY (NAASO)
Introduction
An estimated 97 million adults in the United States are overweight or obese, a condition that substantially raises their risk of morbidity from hypertension, dyslipidemia, type 2 diabetes, coronary heart disease, stroke, gallbladder disease, osteoarthritis, sleep apnea and respiratory problems, and endometrial, breast, prostate, and colon cancers. Higher body weights are also associated with increases in all-cause mortality. Obese individuals may also suffer from social stigmatization and discrimination. As a major contributor to preventive death in the United States today, overweight and obesity pose a major public health challenge.

Overweight is here defined as a body mass index (BMI) of 25 to 29.9 kg/m² and obesity as a BMI of ≥ 30 kg/m². However, overweight and obesity are not mutually exclusive, since obese persons are also overweight. A BMI of 30 is about 30 lb overweight and equivalent to 221 lb in a 6'0" person and to 186 lb in one 5'6". The number of overweight and obese men and women has risen since 1960; in the last decade the percentage of people in these categories has increased to 54.9 percent of adults age 20 years or older. Overweight and obesity are especially evident in some minority groups, as well as in those with lower incomes and less education.

Obesity is a complex multifactorial chronic disease that develops from an interaction of genotype and the environment. Our understanding of how and why obesity develops is incomplete, but involves the integration of social, behavioral, cultural, physiological, metabolic and genetic factors. While there is agreement about the health risks of overweight and obesity, there is less agreement about their management. Some have argued against treating obesity because of the difficulty in maintaining long-term weight loss and of potentially negative consequences of the frequently seen pattern of weight cycling in obese subjects. Others argue that the potential hazards of treatment do not outweigh the known hazards of being obese. The intent of these guidelines is to provide evidence for the effects of treatment on overweight and obesity. The guidelines focus on the role of the primary care practitioner in treating overweight and obesity.

Evidence-Based Guidelines
To evaluate published information and to determine the most appropriate treatment strategies that would constitute evidence-based clinical guidelines on overweight and obesity for physicians and associated health professionals in clinical practice, health care policy makers, and clinical investigators, the National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute’s Obesity Education Initiative convened the Expert Panel on the Identification, Evaluation, and Treatment of Overweight and Obesity in Adults in May 1995. The guidelines are based on a systematic review of the published scientific literature found in MEDLINE from January 1980 to September 1997 of topics identified by the panel as key to extrapolating the data related to the obesity evidence model.
Evidence from approximately 394 randomized controlled trials (RCTs) was considered by the panel.

The panel is comprised of 24 members, 8 ex-officio members, and a methodologist consultant. Areas of expertise contributed to by panel members included primary care, epidemiology, clinical nutrition, exercise physiology, psychology, physiology, and pulmonary disease. There were five meetings of the full panel and two additional meetings of the executive committee comprised of the panel chair and four panel members.

The San Antonio Cochrane Center assisted the panel in the literature abstraction and in organizing the data into appropriate evidence tables. The center pretested and used a standardized 25-page form or “Critical Review Status Sheet” for the literature abstraction. Ultimately, 236 RCT articles were abstracted and the data were then compiled into individual evidence tables developed for each RCT. The data from these RCTs served as the basis for many of the recommendations contained in the guidelines.

The panel determined the criteria for deciding on the appropriateness of an article. At a minimum, studies had to have a time frame from start to finish of at least 4 months. The only exceptions were a few 3-month studies related to dietary therapy and pharmacotherapy. To consider the question of long-term maintenance, studies with outcome data provided at approximately 1 year or longer were examined.

Excluded were studies in which self-reported weights by subjects were the only indicators used to measure weight loss. No exclusions of studies were made by study size. The panel weighed the evidence based on a thorough examination of the threshold or magnitude of the treatment effect. Each evidence statement (other than those with no available evidence) and each recommendation is categorized by a level of evidence which ranges from A to D. Table ES-1 summarizes the categories of evidence by their source and provides a definition for each category.

- **Who is at Risk?** All overweight and obese adults (age 18 years of age or older) with a BMI of \( \geq 25 \) are considered at risk for developing associated morbidities or diseases such as hypertension, high blood cholesterol, type 2 diabetes, coronary heart disease, and other diseases. Individuals with a BMI of 25 to 29.9 are considered overweight, while individuals with a BMI \( \geq 30 \) are considered obese. Treatment of overweight is recommended only when patients have two or more risk factors or a high waist circumference. It should focus on altering dietary and physical activity patterns to prevent development of obesity and to produce moderate weight loss. Treatment of obesity should focus on producing substantial weight loss over a prolonged period. The presence of comorbidities in overweight and obese patients should be considered when deciding on treatment options.

- **Why Treat Overweight and Obesity?** Obesity is clearly associated with increased morbidity and mortality. There is strong evidence that weight loss in overweight and obese individuals reduces risk factors for diabetes and cardiovascular disease (CVD). Strong evidence exists that weight loss reduces blood pressure in both overweight hypertensive and nonhypertensive individuals; reduces serum triglycerides and increases high-density lipoprotein (HDL)-cholesterol; and generally produces some reduction in total serum cholesterol and low-density lipoprotein (LDL)-cholesterol. Weight loss reduces blood glucose levels in overweight and obese persons without diabetes; and weight loss also reduces blood glucose levels and HbA1c in some patients with type 2 diabetes. Although there have been no prospective trials to show changes in mortality with weight loss in obese patients, reductions in risk factors would suggest that develop-
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Evidence Category</th>
<th>Sources of Evidence</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Randomized controlled trials (rich body of data)</td>
<td>Evidence is from endpoints of well-designed RCTs (or trials that depart only minimally from randomization) that provide a consistent pattern of findings in the population for which the recommendation is made. Category A therefore requires substantial numbers of studies involving substantial numbers of participants.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Randomized controlled trials (limited body of data)</td>
<td>Evidence is from endpoints of intervention studies that include only a limited number of RCTs, post hoc or subgroup analysis of RCTs, or meta-analysis of RCTs. In general, Category B pertains when few randomized trials exist, they are small in size, and the trial results are somewhat inconsistent, or the trials were undertaken in a population that differs from the target population of the recommendation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Nonrandomized trials Observational studies</td>
<td>Evidence is from outcomes of uncontrolled or nonrandomized trials or from observational studies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Panel Consensus Judgment</td>
<td>Expert judgment is based on the panel’s synthesis of evidence from experimental research described in the literature and/or derived from the consensus of panel members based on clinical experience or knowledge that does not meet the above-listed criteria. This category is used only in cases where the provision of some guidance was deemed valuable but an adequately compelling clinical literature addressing the subject of the recommendation was deemed insufficient to justify placement in one of the other categories (A through C).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ment of type 2 diabetes and CVD would be reduced with weight loss.

- **What Treatments Are Effective?** A variety of effective options exist for the management of overweight and obese patients, including dietary therapy approaches such as low-calorie diets and lower-fat diets; altering physical activity patterns; behavior therapy techniques; pharmacotherapy*; surgery; and combinations of these techniques.

**Clinical Guidelines**

Treatment of the overweight or obese patient is a two-step process: assessment and treatment management. Assessment requires determination of the degree of overweight and overall risk status. Management includes both reducing excess body weight and instituting other measures to control accompanying risk factors.

**Assessment:** When assessing a patient for risk status and as a candidate for weight loss therapy, consider the patient’s BMI, waist circumference, and overall risk status. Consideration also needs to be given to the patient’s motivation to lose weight.

- **Body Mass Index.** The BMI, which describes relative weight for height, is significantly correlated with total body fat content. The BMI should be used to assess overweight and obesity and to monitor changes in body weight. In addition, measurements of body weight alone can be used to determine efficacy of weight loss therapy. BMI is calculated as weight (kg)/height squared (m²). To estimate BMI using pounds and inches, use: [weight (pounds)/height (inches)²] x 703. Weight classifications by BMI, selected for use in this report, are shown in Table ES-2. A conversion table of heights and weights resulting in selected BMI units is provided in Table ES-3.

- **Waist Circumference.** The presence of excess fat in the abdomen out of proportion to total body fat is an independent predictor of risk factors and morbidity. Waist circumference is positively correlated with abdominal fat content. It provides a clinically acceptable measurement for assessing a patient’s abdominal fat content before and during weight loss treatment. The sex-specific cutoffs noted on the next page can be used to identify

---

**TABLE ES-2:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Classification of Overweight and Obesity by BMI</th>
<th>BMI (kg/m²)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Underweight</td>
<td>&lt; 18.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>18.5 – 24.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overweight</td>
<td>25.0 – 29.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obesity</td>
<td>30.0 – 34.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obesity I</td>
<td>35.0 – 39.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obesity II</td>
<td>≥ 40</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* As of September 1997, the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) requested the voluntary withdrawal from the market of dexfenfluramine and fenfluramine due to a reported association between valvular heart disease and the use of dexfenfluramine or fenfluramine alone or combined with phentermine. The use of these drugs for weight reduction, therefore, is not recommended in this report. Sibutramine is approved by FDA for long-term use. It has limited but definite effects on weight loss and can facilitate weight loss maintenance (Note: FDA approval for orlistat is pending a resolution of labeling issues and results of Phase III trials.)
increased relative risk for the development of obesity-associated risk factors in most adults with a BMI of 25 to 34.9 kg/m²:

These waist circumference cutpoints lose their incremental predictive power in patients with a BMI \( \geq 35 \) kg/m² because these patients will exceed the cutpoints noted above. Table ES-4 adds the disease risk of increased abdominal fat to the disease risk of BMI. These categories denote relative risk, not absolute risk; that is, relative to risk at normal weight. They should not be equated with absolute risk, which is determined by a summation of risk factors. They relate to the need to institute weight loss therapy and do not directly define the required intensity of modification of risk factors associated with obesity.

- **Risk Status.** Assessment of a patient’s absolute risk status requires examination for the presence of:

  **Disease conditions:** established coronary heart disease (CHD), other atherosclerotic diseases, type 2 diabetes, and sleep apnea; patients with these conditions are classified as being at very high risk for disease complications and mortality.

  **Other obesity-associated diseases:** gynecological abnormalities, osteoarthritis, gallstones and their complications, and stress incontinence.

  **Cardiovascular risk factors:** cigarette smoking, hypertension (systolic blood pressure \( \geq 140 \) mm Hg or diastolic blood pressure \( \geq 90 \) mm Hg, or the patient is taking antihypertensive agents), high-risk LDL-cholesterol (\( \geq 160 \) mg/dL), low HDL-cholesterol (\( < 35 \) mg/dL), impaired fasting glucose (fasting plasma glucose of 110 to 125 mg/dL), family history of premature CHD (definite myocardial infarction or sudden death at or before 55 years of age in father or other male first-degree relative, or at or before 65 years of age in mother or other female first-degree relative), and age (men \( \geq 45 \) years and women \( \geq 55 \) years or postmenopausal). Patients can be classified as being at high absolute risk if they have three of the aforementioned risk factors. Patients at high absolute risk usually require clinical management of risk factors to reduce risk.

  Patients who are overweight or obese often have other cardiovascular risk factors. Methods for estimating absolute risk status for developing cardiovascular disease based on these risk factors are described in detail in the National Cholesterol Education Program’s Second Report of the Expert Panel on the Detection, Evaluation, and Treatment of High Blood Cholesterol in Adults (NCEP’s ATP II) and the Sixth Report of the Joint National Committee on Prevention, Detection, Evaluation, and Treatment of High Blood Pressure (JNC VI). The intensity of intervention for cholesterol disorders or hypertension is adjusted according to the absolute risk status estimated from multiple risk correlates. These include both the risk factors listed above and evidence of end-organ damage present in hypertensive patients. Approaches to therapy for cholesterol disorders and hypertension are described in ATP II and JNC VI, respectively. In overweight patients, control of cardiovascular risk factors deserves equal emphasis as weight reduction therapy. Reduction of risk factors will reduce the risk for cardiovascular disease whether or not efforts at weight loss are successful.

  **Other risk factors:** physical inactivity and high serum triglycerides (\( > 200 \) mg/dL).

  When these factors are present, patients can
### Table ES-3: Selected BMI Units Categorized by Inches (cm) and Pounds (kg)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Height in inches (cm)</th>
<th>BMI 25 kg/m²</th>
<th>BMI 27 kg/m²</th>
<th>BMI 30 kg/m²</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>58 (147.32)</td>
<td>119 (53.98)</td>
<td>129 (58.51)</td>
<td>143 (64.86)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59 (149.86)</td>
<td>124 (56.25)</td>
<td>133 (60.33)</td>
<td>148 (67.13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60 (152.40)</td>
<td>128 (58.06)</td>
<td>138 (62.60)</td>
<td>153 (69.40)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61 (154.94)</td>
<td>132 (59.87)</td>
<td>143 (64.86)</td>
<td>158 (71.67)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62 (157.48)</td>
<td>136 (61.69)</td>
<td>147 (66.68)</td>
<td>164 (74.39)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63 (160.02)</td>
<td>141 (63.96)</td>
<td>152 (68.95)</td>
<td>169 (76.66)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64 (162.56)</td>
<td>145 (65.77)</td>
<td>157 (71.21)</td>
<td>174 (78.93)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65 (165.10)</td>
<td>150 (68.04)</td>
<td>162 (73.48)</td>
<td>180 (81.65)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66 (167.64)</td>
<td>155 (70.31)</td>
<td>167 (75.75)</td>
<td>186 (84.37)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>67 (170.18)</td>
<td>159 (72.12)</td>
<td>172 (78.02)</td>
<td>191 (86.64)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68 (172.72)</td>
<td>164 (74.39)</td>
<td>177 (80.29)</td>
<td>197 (89.36)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69 (175.26)</td>
<td>169 (76.66)</td>
<td>182 (82.56)</td>
<td>203 (92.08)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70 (177.80)</td>
<td>174 (78.93)</td>
<td>188 (85.28)</td>
<td>207 (93.89)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71 (180.34)</td>
<td>179 (81.19)</td>
<td>193 (87.54)</td>
<td>215 (97.52)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72 (182.88)</td>
<td>184 (83.46)</td>
<td>199 (90.27)</td>
<td>221 (100.25)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73 (185.42)</td>
<td>189 (85.73)</td>
<td>204 (92.53)</td>
<td>227 (102.97)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74 (187.96)</td>
<td>194 (88.00)</td>
<td>210 (95.26)</td>
<td>233 (105.69)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75 (190.50)</td>
<td>200 (90.72)</td>
<td>216 (97.98)</td>
<td>240 (108.86)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76 (193.04)</td>
<td>205 (92.99)</td>
<td>221 (100.25)</td>
<td>246 (111.58)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Metric conversion formula =**

\[
\text{weight (kg)/height (m)}^2
\]

**Example of BMI calculation:**
A person who weighs 78.93 kilograms and is 177 centimeters tall has a BMI of 25:

\[
\text{weight (78.93 kg)/height (1.77 m)}^2 = 25
\]

**Non-metric conversion formula =**

\[
\text{[weight (pounds)/height (inches)}^2\text{]} \times 703
\]

**Example of BMI calculation:**
A person who weighs 164 pounds and is 68 inches (or 5' 8") tall has a BMI of 25:

\[
\text{[weight (164 pounds)/height (68 inches)}^2\text{]} \times 703 = 25
\]
be considered to have incremental absolute risk above that estimated from the preceding risk factors. Quantitative risk contribution is not available for these risk factors, but their presence heightens the need for weight reduction in obese persons.

**Patient Motivation.** When assessing the patient’s motivation to enter weight loss therapy, the following factors should be evaluated: reasons and motivation for weight reduction; previous history of successful and unsuccessful weight loss attempts; family, friends, and work-site support; the patient’s understanding of the causes of obesity and how obesity contributes to several diseases; attitude toward physical activity; capacity to engage in physical activity; time availability for weight loss intervention; and financial considerations. In addition to considering these issues, the health care practitioner needs to heighen a patient’s motivation for weight loss and prepare the patient for treatment. This can be done by enumerating the dangers accompanying persistent obesity and by describing the strategy for clinically assisted weight reduction. Reviewing the patients’ past attempts at weight loss and explaining how the new treatment plan will be different can encourage patients and provide hope for successful weight loss.

**Evaluation and Treatment:** The general goals of weight loss and management are: (1) at a minimum, to prevent further weight gain; (2) to reduce body weight; and (3) to maintain a lower body weight over the long term. The overall strategy for the evaluation and treatment of overweight and obese patients is presented in the Treatment Algorithm on the next page. This algorithm applies only to the assessment for overweight and obesity and subsequent decisions.

### Table ES-4:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disease Risk* Relative to Normal Weight and Waist Circumference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>BMI (kg/m²)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Underweight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Normal+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overweight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obesity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extreme Obesity</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Disease risk for type 2 diabetes, hypertension, and CVD.

+ Increased waist circumference can also be a marker for increased risk even in persons of normal weight.
Patient Encounter

1. Hx of ≥ 25 BMI?
   - No
   - Yes
2. BMI measured in past 2 years?
   - No
   - Yes
3. BMI measured in past 2 years?
   - Yes
   - No
4. • Measure weight, height, and waist circumference
   • Calculate BMI

5. BMI ≥ 25 OR
   - Hx BMI ≥ 25?
   - No
   - Yes
   - Waist circumference > 88 cm (F)
   - > 102 cm (M)
   - Yes
   - No

6. Assess risk factors

7. BMI ≥ 30 OR
   - Yes
   - No
   - [BMI 25 to 29.9 OR waist circumference > 88 cm (F) > 102 cm (M)]
   - AND ≥ 2 risk factors
   - Yes
   - No

8. Clinician and patient devise goals and treatment strategy for weight loss and risk factor control

9. Progress being made/goal achieved?
   - Yes
   - No

10. Assess reasons for failure to lose weight

11. Maintenance counseling:
    - Dietary therapy
    - Behavior therapy
    - Physical activity

12. Does patient want to lose weight?
    - Yes
    - No

13. Advise to maintain weight/address other risk factors

14. Brief reinforcement/educate on weight management

15. Periodic Weight Check

16. Examination

Treatment Algorithm*

* This algorithm applies only to the assessment for overweight and obesity and subsequent decisions based on that assessment. It does not include any initial overall assessment for cardiovascular risk factors or diseases that are indicated.
based on that assessment. It does not include any initial overall assessment for cardiovascular risk factors or diseases that are indicated.

- **Goals of Weight Loss and Management.**

  The *initial goal* of weight loss therapy is to reduce body weight by approximately 10 percent from baseline. If this goal is achieved, further weight loss can be attempted, if indicated through further evaluation.

  A *reasonable time line* for a 10 percent reduction in body weight is 6 months of therapy. For overweight patients with BMIs in the typical range of 27 to 35, a decrease of 300 to 500 kcal/day will result in weight losses of about ½ to 1 lb/week and a 10 percent loss in 6 months. For more severely obese patients with BMIs > 35, deficits of up to 500 to 1,000 kcal/day will lead to weight losses of about 1 to 2 lb/week and a 10 percent weight loss in 6 months. Weight loss at the rate of 1 to 2 lb/week (calorie deficit of 500 to 1,000 kcal/day) commonly occurs for up to 6 months. After 6 months, the rate of weight loss usually declines and weight plateaus because of a lesser energy expenditure at the lower weight.

  Experience reveals that lost weight usually will be regained unless a weight maintenance program consisting of dietary therapy, physical activity, and behavior therapy is continued indefinitely.

  After 6 months of weight loss treatment, efforts to maintain weight loss should be put in place. If more weight loss is needed, another attempt at weight reduction can be made. This will require further adjustment of the diet and physical activity prescriptions.

  For patients unable to achieve significant weight reduction, prevention of further weight gain is an important goal; such patients may also need to participate in a weight management program.

- **Strategies for Weight Loss and Weight Maintenance.**

  **Dietary Therapy:** A diet that is individually planned and takes into account the patient’s overweight status in order to help create a deficit of 500 to 1,000 kcal/day should be an integral part of any weight loss program. A patient may choose a diet of 1,000 to 1,200 kcal/day for women and 1,200 to 1,500 kcal/day for men. Depending on the patient’s risk status, the low-calorie diet (LCD) recommended should be consistent with the NCEP’s Step I or Step II Diet (see page 74 of the guidelines). Besides decreasing saturated fat, total fats should be 30 percent or less of total calories. Reducing the percentage of dietary fat alone will not produce weight loss unless total calories are also reduced.

  Isocaloric replacement of fat with carbohydrates will reduce the percentage of calories from fat but will not cause weight loss. Reducing dietary fat, along with reducing dietary carbohydrates, usually will be needed to produce the caloric deficit needed for an acceptable weight loss. When fat intake is reduced, priority should be given to reducing saturated fat to enhance lowering of LDL-cholesterol levels. Frequent contacts with the practitioner during dietary therapy help to promote weight loss and weight maintenance at a lower weight.

  **Physical Activity:** An increase in physical activity is an important component of weight loss therapy, although it will not lead to substantially greater weight loss over 6 months. Most weight loss occurs because of decreased caloric intake. Sustained physical activity is most helpful in the prevention of weight regain. In addition, it has a benefit in reducing cardiovascular and diabetes risks beyond that produced by weight reduction alone. For most obese patients, exercise should be initiated slowly, and the intensity should be
increased gradually. The exercise can be done all at one time or intermittently over the day. Initial activities may be walking or swimming at a slow pace. The patient can start by walking 30 minutes for 3 days a week and can build to 45 minutes of more intense walking at least 5 days a week. With this regimen, an additional expenditure of 100 to 200 calories per day can be achieved. All adults should set a long-term goal to accumulate at least 30 minutes or more of moderate-intensity physical activity on most, and preferably all, days of the week. This regimen can be adapted to other forms of physical activity, but walking is particularly attractive because of its safety and accessibility. Patients should be encouraged to increase “every day” activities such as taking the stairs instead of the elevator. With time, depending on progress and functional capacity, the patient may engage in more strenuous activities. Competitive sports, such as tennis and volleyball, can provide an enjoyable form of exercise for many, but care must be taken to avoid injury. Reducing sedentary time is another strategy to increase activity by undertaking frequent, less strenuous activities.

**Behavior Therapy:** Strategies, based on learning principles such as reinforcement, that provide tools for overcoming barriers to compliance with dietary therapy and/or increased physical activity are helpful in achieving weight loss and weight maintenance. Specific strategies include self-monitoring of both eating habits and physical activity, stress management, stimulus control, problem solving, contingency management, cognitive restructuring, and social support.

**Combined Therapy:** A combined intervention of behavior therapy, an LCD, and increased physical activity provides the most successful therapy for weight loss and weight maintenance. This type of intervention should be maintained for at least 6 months before considering pharmacotherapy.

**Pharmacotherapy:** In carefully selected patients, appropriate drugs can augment LCDs, physical activity, and behavior therapy in weight loss. Weight loss drugs that have been approved by the FDA for long-term use can be useful adjuncts to dietary therapy and physical activity for some patients with a BMI of \( \geq 30 \) with no concomitant risk factors or diseases, and for patients with a BMI of \( \geq 27 \) with concomitant risk factors or diseases. The risk factors and diseases considered important enough to warrant pharmacotherapy at a BMI of 27 to 29.9 are hypertension, dyslipidemia, CHD, type 2 diabetes, and sleep apnea. Continual assessment by the physician of drug therapy for efficacy and safety is necessary.

At the present time, sibutramine is available for long-term use. (Note: FDA approval of orlistat is pending a resolution of labeling issues and results of Phase III trials.) It enhances weight loss modestly and can help facilitate weight loss maintenance. Potential side effects with drugs, nonetheless, must be kept in mind. With sibutramine, increases in blood pressure and heart rate may occur. Sibutramine should not be used in patients with a history of hypertension, CHD, congestive heart failure, arrhythmias, or history of stroke. With orlistat, fat soluble vitamins may require replacement because of partial malabsorption. All patients should be carefully monitored for these side effects.

**Weight Loss Surgery:** Weight loss surgery is one option for weight reduction in a limited number of patients with clinically severe obesity, i.e., BMIs \( \geq 40 \) or \( \geq 35 \) with comorbid conditions. Weight loss surgery should be reserved for patients in whom efforts at medical therapy have failed and who are suffering from the complications of extreme obesity.
Gastrointestinal surgery (gastric restriction [vertical gastric banding] or gastric bypass [Roux-en Y]) is an intervention weight loss option for motivated subjects with acceptable operative risks. An integrated program must be in place to provide guidance on diet, physical activity, and behavioral and social support both prior to and after the surgery.

- Adapt Weight Loss Programs To Meet the Needs of Diverse Patients. Standard treatment approaches for overweight and obesity must be tailored to the needs of various patients or patient groups. Large individual variation exists within any social or cultural group; furthermore, substantial overlap among subcultures occurs within the larger society. There is, therefore, no “cookbook” or standardized set of rules to optimize weight reduction with a given type of patient. However, to be more culturally sensitive and to incorporate patient characteristics in obesity treatment programs: consider and adapt the setting and staffing for the program; consider how the obesity treatment program integrates into other aspects of patient health care and self care; and expect and allow for program modifications based on patient responses and preferences.

The issues of weight reduction after age 65 involve such questions as: does weight loss reduce risk factors in older adults; are there risks associated with obesity treatment that are unique to older adults; and does weight reduction prolong the lives of older adults? Although there is less certainty about the importance of treating overweight at older ages than at younger ages, a clinical decision to forgo obesity treatment in older adults should be guided by an evaluation of the potential benefit of weight reduction and the reduction of risk for future cardiovascular events.

In the obese patient who smokes, smoking cessation is a major goal of risk factor management. Many well-documented health benefits accompany smoking cessation, but a major obstacle to cessation has been the attendant weight gain observed in about 80 percent of quitters. This weight gain averages 4.5 to 7 lb, but in 13 percent of women and 10 percent of men, weight gain exceeds 28 lb. Weight gain that accompanies smoking cessation has been quite resistant to most dietary, behavioral, or physical activity interventions. The weight gained with smoking cessation is less likely to produce negative health consequences than would continued smoking. For this reason, smoking cessation should be strongly advocated regardless of baseline weight. Prevention of weight gain through diet and physical activity should be stressed. For practical reasons, it may be prudent to avoid initiating smoking cessation and weight loss therapy simultaneously. If weight gain ensues after smoking cessation, it should be managed vigorously according to the guidelines outlined in this report. Although short-term weight gain is a common side effect of smoking cessation, this gain does not rule out the possibility of long-term weight control.

SUMMARY OF EVIDENCE-BASED RECOMMENDATIONS

A) Advantages of Weight Loss

The recommendation to treat overweight and obesity is based not only on evidence that relates obesity to increased mortality but also on RCT evidence that weight loss reduces risk factors for disease. Thus, weight loss may not only help control diseases worsened by obesity, it may also help decrease the likelihood of developing these diseases. The panel reviewed RCT evidence to determine the effect of weight loss on blood pressure and hypertension, serum/plasma lipid concentrations, and fasting blood glucose and fasting insulin. Recommendations focusing on
these conditions underscore the advantages of weight loss.

1. Blood Pressure

To evaluate the effect of weight loss on blood pressure and hypertension, 76 articles reporting RCTs were considered for inclusion in these guidelines. Of the 45 accepted articles, 35 were lifestyle trials and 10 were pharmacotherapy trials. There is strong and consistent evidence from these lifestyle trials in both overweight hypertensive and nonhypertensive patients that weight loss produced by lifestyle modifications reduces blood pressure levels. Limited evidence exists that decreases in abdominal fat will reduce blood pressure in overweight nonhypertensive individuals, although not independent of weight loss, and there is considerable evidence that increased aerobic activity to increase cardiorespiratory fitness reduces blood pressure (independent of weight loss). There is also suggestive evidence from randomized trials that weight loss produced by most weight loss medications, except for sibutramine, in combination with adjuvant lifestyle modifications will be accompanied by reductions in blood pressure. Based on a review of the evidence from the 45 RCT blood pressure articles, the panel makes the following recommendation:

Weight loss is recommended to lower elevated blood pressure in overweight and obese persons with high blood pressure.
Evidence Category A.

2. Serum/Plasma Lipids

Sixty-five RCT articles were evaluated for the effect of weight loss on serum/plasma concentrations of total cholesterol, LDL-cholesterol, very low-density lipoprotein (VLDL)-cholesterol, triglycerides, and HDL-cholesterol. Studies were conducted on individuals over a range of obesity and lipid levels. Of the 22 articles accepted for inclusion in these guidelines, 14 RCT articles examined lifestyle trials while the remaining 8 articles reviewed pharmacotherapy trials. There is strong evidence from the 14 lifestyle trials that weight loss produced by lifestyle modifications in overweight individuals is accompanied by reductions in serum triglycerides and by increases in HDL-cholesterol. Weight loss generally produces some reductions in serum total cholesterol and LDL-cholesterol. Limited evidence exists that a decrease in abdominal fat correlates with improvements in lipids, although the effect may not be independent of weight loss, and there is strong evidence that increased aerobic activity to increase cardiorespiratory fitness favorably affects blood lipids, particularly if accompanied by weight loss. There is suggestive evidence from the eight randomized pharmacotherapy trials that weight loss produced by weight loss medications and adjuvant lifestyle modifications, including caloric restriction and physical activity, does not result in consistent effects on blood lipids. The following recommendation is based on the review of the data in these 22 RCT articles:

Weight loss is recommended to lower elevated levels of total cholesterol, LDL-cholesterol, and triglycerides, and to raise low levels of HDL-cholesterol in overweight and obese persons with dyslipidemia.
Evidence Category A.

3. Blood Glucose

To evaluate the effect of weight loss on fasting blood glucose and fasting insulin levels, 49 RCT articles were reviewed for inclusion in these guidelines. Of the 17 RCT articles accepted, 9 RCT articles examined lifestyle therapy trials and 8 RCT articles considered the effects of pharmacotherapy on weight loss and subsequent changes in blood glucose. There is strong evidence from the nine lifestyle therapy trials that
weight loss produced by lifestyle modification reduces blood glucose levels in overweight and obese persons without diabetes, and weight loss reduces blood glucose levels and HbA1c in some patients with type 2 diabetes. There is suggestive evidence that decreases in abdominal fat will improve glucose tolerance in overweight individuals with impaired glucose tolerance, although not independent of weight loss; and there is limited evidence that increased cardiorespiratory fitness improves glucose tolerance in overweight individuals with impaired glucose tolerance or diabetes, although not independent of weight loss. In addition, there is suggestive evidence from randomized trials that weight loss induced by weight loss medications does not appear to improve blood glucose levels any better than weight loss through lifestyle therapy in overweight persons both with and without type 2 diabetes. Based on a full review of the data in these 17 RCT articles, the panel makes the following recommendation:

Weight loss is recommended to lower elevated blood glucose levels in overweight and obese persons with type 2 diabetes. Evidence Category A.

**B  Measurement of Degree of Overweight and Obesity**

Patients should have their BMI and levels of abdominal fat measured not only for the initial assessment of the degree of overweight and obesity, but also as a guide to the efficacy of weight loss treatment. Although there are no RCTs that review measurements of overweight and obesity, the panel determined that this aspect of patient care warranted further consideration and that this guidance was deemed valuable. Therefore, the following four recommendations that are included in the Treatment Guidelines were based on nonrandomized studies as well as clinical experience.

1. **BMI To Assess Overweight and Obesity**
   There are a number of accurate methods to assess body fat (e.g., total body water, total body potassium, bioelectrical impedance, and dual-energy X-ray absorptiometry), but no trial data exist to indicate that one measure of fatness is better than any other for following overweight and obese patients during treatment. Since measuring body fat by these techniques is often expensive and is not readily available, a more practical approach for the clinical setting is the measurement of BMI; epidemiological and observational studies have shown that BMI provides an acceptable approximation of total body fat for the majority of patients. Because there are no published studies that compare the effectiveness of different measures for evaluating changes in body fat during weight reduction, the panel bases its recommendation on expert judgment from clinical experience:

   Practitioners should use the BMI to assess overweight and obesity. Body weight alone can be used to follow weight loss, and to determine efficacy of therapy. Evidence Category C.

2. **BMI To Estimate Relative Risk**
   In epidemiological studies, BMI is the favored measure of excess weight to estimate relative risk of disease. BMI correlates both with morbidity and mortality; the relative risk for CVD risk factors and CVD incidence increases in a graded fashion with increasing BMI in all population groups. Moreover, calculating BMI is simple, rapid, and inexpensive, and can be applied generally to adults. The panel, therefore, makes this recommendation:
The BMI should be used to classify overweight and obesity and to estimate relative risk of disease compared to normal weight. Evidence Category C.

3. Assessing Abdominal Fat
For the most effective technique for assessing abdominal fat content, the panel considered measures of waist circumference, waist-to-hip ratio (WHR), magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), and computed tomography. Evidence from epidemiological studies shows waist circumference to be a better marker of abdominal fat content than WHR, and that it is the most practical anthropometric measurement for assessing a patient’s abdominal fat content before and during weight loss treatment. Computed tomography and MRI are both more accurate but impractical for routine clinical use. Based on evidence that waist circumference is a better marker than WHR—and taking into account that the MRI and computed tomography techniques are expensive and not readily available for clinical practice—the panel makes the following recommendation:

The waist circumference should be used to assess abdominal fat content. Evidence Category C.

4. Sex-Specific Measurements
Evidence from epidemiological studies indicates that a high waist circumference is associated with an increased risk for type 2 diabetes, dyslipidemia, hypertension, and CVD. Therefore, the panel judged that sex-specific cutoffs for waist circumference can be used to identify increased risk associated with abdominal fat in adults with a BMI in the range of 25 to 34.9. These cutoffs can be applied to all adult ethnic or racial groups. On the other hand, if a patient is very short, or has a BMI above the 25 to 34.9 range, waist cutpoints used for the general population may not be applicable. Based on the evidence from nonrandomized studies, the panel makes this recommendation:

For adult patients with a BMI of 25 to 34.9 kg/m², sex-specific waist circumference cutoffs should be used in conjunction with BMI to identify increased disease risks. Evidence Category C.

Goals for Weight Loss
The general goals of weight loss and management are to reduce body weight, to maintain a lower body weight over the long term, and to prevent further weight gain. Evidence indicates that a moderate weight loss can be maintained over time if some form of therapy continues. It is better to maintain a moderate weight loss over a prolonged period than to regain from a marked weight loss.

1. Initial Goal of Weight Loss from Baseline
There is strong and consistent evidence from randomized trials that overweight and obese patients in well-designed programs can achieve a weight loss of as much as 10 percent of baseline weight. In the diet trials, an average of 8 percent of baseline weight was lost. Since this average includes persons who did not lose weight, an individualized goal of 10 percent is reasonable. The panel, therefore, recommends that:

The initial goal of weight loss therapy should be to reduce body weight by approximately 10 percent from baseline. With success, further weight loss can be attempted if indicated through further assessment. Evidence Category A.
2. Amount of Weight Loss
Randomized trials suggest that weight loss at the rate of 1 to 2 lb/week (calorie deficit of 500 to 1,000 kcal/day) commonly occurs for up to 6 months.

Weight loss should be about 1 to 2 lb/week for a period of 6 months, with the subsequent strategy based on the amount of weight lost. Evidence Category B.

D HOW TO ACHIEVE WEIGHT LOSS
The panel reviewed relevant treatment strategies designed for weight loss that can also be used to foster long-term weight control and prevention of weight gain. The consequent recommendations emphasize the potential effectiveness of weight control using multiple interventions and strategies, including dietary therapy, physical activity, behavior therapy, pharmacotherapy, and surgery, as well as combinations of these strategies.

1. Dietary Therapy
The panel reviewed 86 RCT articles to determine the effectiveness of diets on weight loss (including LCDs, very low-calorie diets (VLCDs), vegetarian diets, American Heart Association dietary guidelines, the NCEP’s Step I diet with caloric restriction, and other low-fat regimens with varying combinations of macronutrients). Of the 86 articles reviewed, 48 were accepted for inclusion in these guidelines. These RCTs indicate strong and consistent evidence that an average weight loss of 8 percent of initial body weight can be obtained over 3 to 12 months with an LCD and that this weight loss effects a decrease in abdominal fat; and, although lower-fat diets without targeted caloric reduction help promote weight loss by producing a reduced caloric intake, lower-fat diets with targeted caloric reduction promote greater weight loss than lower-fat diets alone. Further, VLCDs produce greater initial weight losses than LCDs (over the long term of >1 year, weight loss is not different than that of the LCDs). In addition, randomized trials suggest that no improvement in cardiorespiratory fitness as measured by VO₂ max appears to occur in obese adults who lose weight on LCDs alone without physical activity. The following recommendations are based on the evidence extracted from the 48 accepted articles:

LCDs are recommended for weight loss in overweight and obese persons. Evidence Category A. Reducing fat as part of an LCD is a practical way to reduce calories. Evidence Category A.

Reducing dietary fat alone without reducing calories is not sufficient for weight loss. However, reducing dietary fat, along with reducing dietary carbohydrates, can facilitate caloric reduction. Evidence Category A.

A diet that is individually planned to help create a deficit of 500 to 1,000 kcal/day should be an integral part of any program aimed at achieving a weight loss of 1 to 2 lb/week. Evidence Category A.

2. Physical Activity
Effects of Physical Activity on Weight Loss
Twenty-three RCT articles were reviewed to determine the effect of physical activity on weight loss, abdominal fat (measured by waist circumference), and changes in cardiorespiratory fitness (VO₂ max). Thirteen of these articles were accepted for inclusion in these guidelines. A review of these articles reveals strong evidence that physical activity alone, i.e., aerobic exercise, in obese adults results in modest weight loss and that physical activity in overweight and obese
adults increases cardiorespiratory fitness, independent of weight loss. Randomized trials suggest that increased physical activity in overweight and obese adults reduces abdominal fat only modestly or not at all, and that regular physical activity independently reduces the risk for CVD. The panel’s recommendation on physical activity is based on the evidence from these 13 articles:

**Physical activity is recommended as part of a comprehensive weight loss therapy and weight control program because it:** (1) modestly contributes to weight loss in overweight and obese adults (Evidence Category A), (2) may decrease abdominal fat (Evidence Category B), (3) increases cardiorespiratory fitness (Evidence Category A), and (4) may help with maintenance of weight loss (Evidence Category C).

**Physical activity should be an integral part of weight loss therapy and weight maintenance.** Initially, moderate levels of physical activity for 30 to 45 minutes, 3 to 5 days a week, should be encouraged. All adults should set a long-term goal to accumulate at least 30 minutes or more of moderate-intensity physical activity on most, and preferably all, days of the week. Evidence Category B.

**Effects of Physical Activity and Diet on Weight Loss (Combined Therapy)**
Twenty-three RCT articles were reviewed to determine the effects on body weight of a combination of a reduced-calorie diet with increased physical activity. Fifteen of these articles were accepted for inclusion in the guidelines. These articles contain strong evidence that the combination of a reduced-calorie diet and increased physical activity produces greater weight loss than diet alone or physical activity alone, and that the combination of diet and physical activity improves cardiorespiratory fitness as measured by VO2 max in overweight and obese adults when compared to diet alone. The combined effect of a reduced calorie diet and increased-physical activity seemingly produced modestly greater reductions in abdominal fat than either diet alone or physical activity alone, although it has not been shown to be independent of weight loss. The panel’s following recommendations are based on the evidence from these articles:

The combination of a reduced calorie diet and increased physical activity is recommended since it produces weight loss that may also result in decreases in abdominal fat and increases in cardiorespiratory fitness. Evidence Category A.

3. **Behavior Therapy**
Thirty-six RCTs were reviewed to evaluate whether behavior therapy provides additional benefit beyond other weight loss approaches, as well as to compare various behavioral techniques. Of the 36 RCTs reviewed, 22 were accepted. These RCTs strongly indicate that behavioral strategies to reinforce changes in diet and physical activity in obese adults produce weight loss in the range of 10 percent over 4 months to 1 year. In addition, no one behavior therapy appeared superior to any other in its effect on weight loss; multimodal strategies appear to work best and those interventions with the greatest intensity appear to be associated with the greatest weight loss. Long-term follow-up of patients undergoing behavior therapy shows a return to baseline weight for the great majority of subjects in the absence of continued behavioral intervention. Randomized trials suggest that behavior therapy, when used in combi-
nation with other weight loss approaches, provides additional benefits in assisting patients to lose weight short-term, i.e., 1 year (no additional benefits are found at 3 to 5 years). The panel found little evidence on the effect of behavior therapy on cardiorespiratory fitness. Evidence from these articles provided the basis for the following recommendation:

*Behavior therapy is a useful adjunct when incorporated into treatment for weight loss and weight maintenance. Evidence Category B.*

There is also suggestive evidence that patient motivation is a key component for success in a weight loss program. The panel, therefore, makes the following recommendation:

*Practitioners need to assess the patient’s motivation to enter weight loss therapy; assess the readiness of the patient to implement the plan and then take appropriate steps to motivate the patient for treatment. Evidence Category D.*

### 4. Summary of Lifestyle Therapy

There is strong evidence that combined interventions of an LCD, increased physical activity, and behavior therapy provide the most successful therapy for weight loss and weight maintenance. The panel makes the following recommendation:

*Weight loss and weight maintenance therapy should employ the combination of LCDs, increased physical activity, and behavior therapy. Evidence Category A.*

### 5. Pharmacotherapy

A review of 44 pharmacotherapy RCT articles provides strong evidence that pharmacological therapy (which has generally been studied along with lifestyle modification, including diet and physical activity) using dexfenfluramine, sibutramine, orlistat, or phentermine/fenfluramine results in weight loss in obese adults when used for 6 months to 1 year. Strong evidence also indicates that appropriate weight loss drugs can augment diet, physical activity, and behavior therapy in weight loss. Adverse side effects from the use of weight loss drugs have been observed in patients. As a result of the observed association of valvular heart disease in patients taking fenfluramine and dexfenfluramine alone or in combination, these drugs have been withdrawn from the market. Weight loss drugs approved by the FDA for long-term use may be useful as an adjunct to diet and physical activity for patients with a BMI of ≥ 30 with no concomitant obesity-related risk factors or diseases, as well as for patients with a BMI of ≥ 27 with concomitant risk factors or diseases; moreover, using weight loss drugs singly (not in combination) and starting with the lowest effective doses can decrease the likelihood of adverse effects. Based on this evidence, the panel makes the following recommendation:

*Weight loss drugs approved by the FDA may be used as part of a comprehensive weight loss program, including dietary therapy and physical activity for patients with a BMI of ≥ 30 with no concomitant obesity-related risk factors or diseases, and for patients with a BMI of ≥ 27 with concomitant obesity-related risk factors or diseases. Weight loss drugs should never be used without concomitant lifestyle modifications. Continual assessment of drug therapy for efficacy and safety is necessary. If the drug is efficacious in helping the patient to lose and/or maintain weight loss*
and there are no serious adverse effects, it can be continued. If not, it should be discontinued. Evidence Category B.

6. Weight Loss Surgery
The panel reviewed 14 RCTs that examined the effect of surgical procedures on weight loss; 8 were deemed appropriate. All of the studies included individuals who had a BMI of 40 kg/m² or above, or a BMI of 35 to 40 kg/m² with comorbidity. These trials provide strong evidence that surgical interventions in adults with clinically severe obesity, i.e., BMIs ≥ 40 or ≥ 35 with comorbid conditions, result in substantial weight loss, and suggestive evidence that lifelong medical surveillance after surgery is necessary. Therefore, the panel makes the following recommendation:

**Weight loss surgery is an option for carefully selected patients with clinically severe obesity (BMI ≥ 40 or ≥ 35 with comorbid conditions) when less invasive methods of weight loss have failed and the patient is at high risk for obesity-associated morbidity or mortality. Evidence Category B.**

E GOALS FOR WEIGHT LOSS MAINTENANCE
Once the goals of weight loss have been successfully achieved, maintenance of a lower body weight becomes the challenge. Whereas studies have shown that weight loss is achievable, it is difficult to maintain over a long period of time (3 to 5 years). In fact, the majority of persons who lose weight, once dismissed from clinical therapy, frequently regain it—so the challenge to the patient and the practitioner is to maintain the weight loss. Successful weight reduction thus depends on continuing a maintenance program on a long-term basis. In the past, obtaining the goal of weight loss has been considered the end of weight loss therapy. Observation, monitoring, and encouragement of patients who have successfully lost weight should be continued long term. The panel’s recommendations on weight loss maintenance are derived from RCT evidence as well as nonrandomized and observational studies.

1. Weight Maintenance Phase
RCTs from the Behavior Therapy section above suggest that lost weight usually will be regained unless a weight maintenance program consisting of dietary therapy, physical activity, and behavior therapy is continued indefinitely. Drug therapy in addition may be helpful during the weight maintenance phase. The panel also reviewed RCT evidence that considered the rate of weight loss and the role of weight maintenance. These RCTs suggest that after 6 months of weight loss treatment, efforts to maintain weight loss are important. Therefore, the panel recommends the following:

**After successful weight loss, the likelihood of weight loss maintenance is enhanced by a program consisting of dietary therapy, physical activity, and behavior therapy which should be continued indefinitely. Drug therapy can also be used. However, drug safety and efficacy beyond 1 year of total treatment have not been established. Evidence Category B.**

**A weight maintenance program should be a priority after the initial 6 months of weight loss therapy. Evidence Category B.**

Strong evidence indicates that better weight loss results are achieved with dietary therapy when the duration of the intervention is at least 6 months. Suggestive evidence also indicates that during dietary therapy, frequent contacts
between professional counselors and patients promote weight loss and maintenance. Therefore, the panel recommends the following:

The literature suggests that weight loss and weight maintenance therapies that provide a greater frequency of contacts between the patient and the practitioner and are provided over the long term should be utilized whenever possible. This can lead to more successful weight loss and weight maintenance. Evidence Category C.

Special Treatment Groups
The needs of special patient groups must be addressed when considering treatment options for overweight and obesity. The guidelines focus on three such groups including smokers, older adults, and diverse patient populations.

1. Smokers
Cigarette smoking is a major risk factor for cardiopulmonary disease. Because of its attendant high risk, smoking cessation is a major goal of risk-factor management. This aim is especially important in the overweight or obese patient, who usually carries excess risk from obesity-associated risk factors. Thus, smoking cessation in these patients becomes a high priority for risk reduction. Smoking and obesity together apparently compound cardiovascular risk, but fear of weight gain upon smoking cessation is an obstacle for many patients. Therefore, the panel recommends that:

All smokers, regardless of their weight status, should quit smoking. Evidence Category A. Prevention of weight gain should be encouraged and if weight gain does occur, it should be treated through dietary therapy, physical activity, and behavior therapy, maintaining the primary emphasis on the importance of abstinence from smoking. Evidence Category C.

2. Older Adults
The general nutritional safety of weight reduction at older ages is of concern because restrictions on overall food intake due to dieting could result in inadequate intake of protein or essential vitamins or minerals. In addition, involuntary weight loss indicative of occult disease might be mistaken for success in voluntary weight reduction. These concerns can be alleviated by providing proper nutritional counseling and regular body weight monitoring in older persons for whom weight reduction is prescribed. A review of several studies indicates that age alone should not preclude treatment for obesity in adult men and women. In fact, there is evidence from RCTs that weight reduction has similar effects in improving cardiovascular disease risk factors in older and younger adults. Therefore, in the panel’s judgment:

A clinical decision to forego obesity treatment in older adults should be guided by an evaluation of the potential benefits of weight reduction for day-to-day functioning and reduction of the risk of future cardiovascular events, as well as the patient’s motivation for weight reduction. Care must be taken to ensure that any weight reduction program minimizes the likelihood of adverse effects on bone health or other aspects of nutritional status. Evidence Category D.
3. **Diverse Patient Populations**

Standard obesity treatment approaches should be tailored to the needs of various patients or patient groups. It is, however, difficult to determine from the literature how often this occurs, how specific programs and outcomes are influenced by tailoring, and whether it makes weight loss programs more effective. After reviewing two RCTs, four cross-sectional studies, and four intervention studies, as well as additional published literature on treatment approaches with diverse patient populations, the panel recommends the following:

> The possibility that a standard approach to weight loss will work differently in diverse patient populations must be considered when setting expectations about treatment outcomes. **Evidence Category B.**
RATIONALE FOR GUIDELINES DEVELOPMENT

An estimated 97 million adults in the United States are overweight or obese, 1 a condition that substantially raises their risk of morbidity from hypertension, 2-6 type 2 diabetes, 7-10 stroke, 11-13 gallbladder disease, 14,15 osteoarthritis, 16-18 sleep apnea and respiratory problems, 19-21 and endometrial, breast, prostate, and colon cancers. 22-24 As a major contributor to preventive death in the United States today, 25 overweight and obesity pose a major public health challenge. Not only is the prevalence of this serious medical condition soaring among adults (between 1960 and 1994, overweight increased from 30.5 to 32 percent among adults ages 20 to 74 and obesity increased from 12.8 percent to 22.5 percent), but it is also affecting ever greater numbers of American youth and exacting a particularly harsh toll from low income women and minorities. The Third National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey (NHANES III) estimated that 13.7 percent of children and 11.5 percent of adolescents are overweight, while a number of smaller, ethnic-specific studies suggest that overweight and obesity may afflict up to 30 to 40 percent of children and youth from minority populations. 26,27

The prevalence of overweight and obesity in adults in the United States increased markedly during the last decade. According to NHANES III data, 54.9 percent of U.S. adults aged 20 years and older are either overweight or obese; 32.6 percent are overweight, defined as having a body mass index (BMI)* of 25.0 to 29.9 kg/m²; and 22.3 percent are obese with a BMI of ≥ 30 kg/m². 1 The panel acknowledges that overweight and obesity are not mutually exclusive; obese persons are also overweight. Since overweight and obesity lead to increased morbidity and mortality, these figures demonstrate the enormity of the public health problem, as well as the clinical problem, of overweight and obesity in this country.

In this report, overweight is defined as a BMI of 25.0 to 29.9 kg/m² and obesity as a BMI of ≥ 30 kg/m². The rationale behind these definitions is based on epidemiological data that show increases in mortality with BMIs above 25 kg/m². 28-32 The increase in mortality, however, tends to be modest until a BMI of 30 kg/m² is reached. 28,31,32 For persons with a BMI of ≥ 30 kg/m², mortality rates from all causes, and especially from cardiovascular disease, are generally increased by 50 to 100 percent above that of persons with BMIs in the range of 20 to 25 kg/m². 28,31,32

Overweight and obesity result from a complex interaction between genes and the environment characterized by long-term energy imbalance due to a sedentary lifestyle, excessive caloric consumption, or both. 33 They develop in a sociocultural environment characterized by mechanization, sedentary lifestyle, and ready access to abundant food. Attempts to prevent overweight and obesity are difficult to both study and achieve. Indeed, few research efforts have investigated either individual or community-based prevention strategies. 34

---

* The BMI is calculated as follows: BMI = weight (kg)/ height squared (m²). Conversion: [weight (pounds)/height (inches)²] x 703 (1 lb = 0.45 kg) (1.in = 2.54 cm = 0.0254 m). A BMI of 25 is equivalent to 184 lb in a 6'0" person and to 155 lb in one5'6". A BMI of 30 is equivalent to 221 lb in a 6'0" person and to 186 lb in one 5'6". (The conversion of BMI according to weight for height is provided in Appendix V.)
A substantial body of research, however, does exist on the health risks of overweight and obesity, and on methods for treatment. This report, which bases its recommendations primarily on published evidence, emphasizes the important role of primary care practitioners in evaluating all overweight and obese adults and promoting weight control through the use of multiple interventions and strategies tailored to particular patient needs. Although the recommendations and guidelines included in this report focus on the clinical assessment and treatment of overweight and obese patients, a second important goal is to encourage primary care practitioners to take an active role in preventing inappropriate weight gain among all their patients.

**OBJECTIVES OF THE GUIDELINES**

- To identify, evaluate, and summarize published information about the assessment and treatment of overweight and obesity;
- To provide evidence-based guidelines for physicians, other health care practitioners, and health care organizations for the evaluation and treatment of overweight and obesity in adults; and
- To identify areas for future research.

**GUIDELINE DEVELOPMENT METHODOLOGY**

The National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute’s (NHLBI) Obesity Education Initiative, in cooperation with the National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases, convened the Expert Panel on the Identification, Evaluation, and Treatment of Overweight and Obesity in Adults. These guidelines address the treatment of overweight and obesity only in adults, but it is the judgment of the panel that guidelines for treating obesity in children are equally important and should be drafted as soon as possible (see Appendix III for information on overweight and obesity in children). The panel’s charge was to develop evidence-based clinical guidelines for primary care practitioners; however, the guidelines should also be useful for certain specialists. The decision to develop “evidence-based” guidelines was based on the increased attention being paid to clinical practice guidelines from methodologists, professional associations, third-party payers and policy makers, and the NHLBI’s mission to analyze research results with the goal of providing information that may enable health care practitioners to enhance their ability to detect, treat, and prevent disease. In keeping with this approach, the panel

- defined topics to be included in the guidelines;
- developed an evidence model depicting the strategy of inquiry for each area of scientific interest;
- established criteria for searching and abstracting the literature;
- constructed and reviewed evidence tables of individual studies and summary tables of studies falling within a specific category of evidence; and
- identified the level or strength of the evidence that served as the basis for the recommendations.

A complete description of the methodology used to develop the guidelines is included in the report as Appendix I.A.1.

The guidelines are based primarily on a systematic review of the published scientific literature in English found in MEDLINE from January 1980 through September 1997. This was done in the interest of time and economy. This information was supplemented by material provided by the panel and an ancestral search of appropriate references in eligible articles. The literature was searched and systematically reviewed by

- establishing a priori eligibility criteria for inclusion of studies;
and may require surgery. These guidelines are not intended for pregnant women. Excluded from the analysis were adults with pharmacologically induced obesity and those with specific genetic syndromes associated with overweight and obesity.

The selection of weight loss interventions to be considered was determined by the literature review. Namely, the panel considered any topic for which articles meeting inclusion criteria were found, including diet, physical activity, behavior therapy, pharmacological therapy, surgery, and combinations of these modalities. No clinical interventions were excluded at the outset. However, the panel did not consider other interventions such as acupuncture or hypnosis, for which no randomized trial articles were available. Clinical interventions to prevent further weight gain in individuals already overweight were also considered relevant.

The panel also evaluated population factors and clinical situations that might potentially influence the physiological, medical, behavioral, or sociocultural context for obesity identification and treatment. Evidence on special populations and situations was provided from RCTs and non-RCTs when available, but in many cases such evidence was meager. Population factors and clinical situations selected for special consideration for obesity classification and treatment were age, gender, race/ethnicity, socioeconomic status, pregnancy, eating disorders, sleep apnea, extreme obesity (BMI ≥ 40), concurrent treatment of other major conditions (such as heart disease or diabetes), and treatment of obesity in conjunction with smoking cessation. When evidence on these special populations or clinical conditions was insufficient to meet standards for inclusion in the main text of the guidelines, relevant issues are identified for the user, and in some cases are cross-referenced to an appendix (see Appendix III) or discussed in sidebar text as a commentary.

* The San Antonio Cochrane Center is one of 12 centers around the world that comprise the Cochrane Collaboration. The Cochrane Collaboration is an international organization established in 1993 whose mission is to prepare, maintain, and disseminate systematic reviews and meta-analyses of health care interventions.
The panel recognized the possibility of an advocacy “bias” due to the large number of panel members drawn from organizations with an advocacy role in the treatment of obesity. As a result, it was agreed to obtain formal external reviews of the document from 59 professional societies, consumer groups and government agencies representing a wide spectrum of expertise and concern about obesity.

The format for those sections of the report based on the RCT evidence begins with an evidence statement followed by the rationale for that statement. At the end of a series of related evidence statements, a recommendation is given.

Each evidence statement (other than those with no available evidence) and each recommendation is categorized by a level of evidence (A through D) as described below. Statements for which there is no available evidence are so indicated.

**Category A:** Evidence is from endpoints of well-designed RCTs (or trials that depart only minimally from randomization) that provide a consistent pattern of findings in the population for which the recommendation is made. Category A therefore requires substantial numbers of studies involving substantial numbers of participants.

**Category B:** Evidence is from endpoints of intervention studies that include only a limited number of RCTs, post-hoc or subgroup analysis of RCTs, or meta-analysis of RCTs. In general, Category B pertains when few randomized trials exist, they are small in size, and the trial results are somewhat inconsistent, or the trials were undertaken in a population that differs from the target population of the recommendation.

**Category C:** Evidence is from outcomes of uncontrolled or nonrandomized trials or from observation studies.

**Category D:** Expert judgment is based on the panel’s synthesis of evidence from experimental research described in the literature and/or derived from the consensus of panel members based on clinical experience or knowledge that does not meet the above-listed criteria. This category is used only in cases where the provisions of some guidance was deemed valuable but an adequately compelling clinical literature addressing the subject of the recommendation was deemed insufficient to justify placement in one of the other categories (A through C).

In applying these guidelines, the reader should note some caveats:

- The emphasis of these guidelines was to identify effective interventions, not to rank-order them in terms of their efficacy or effectiveness. The panel chose not to emphasize comparisons among interventions because there were few studies that compared long-term outcomes. Also, since individual preferences and circumstances often dictate choice of therapy, the panel wished to present a menu of options rather than a ranked list of choices.

- When no evidence was available on the efficacy of a treatment, the panel usually rendered no opinion. An absence of studies should not be confused with an absence of effect. While clinicians may prefer to use proven therapies rather than untested ones, the lack of testing does not denote that the untested therapy does not work.

- The limitations of RCTs must be kept in mind. The RCT is the primary method for demonstrating efficacy. Often, participants enrolled in RCTs differ from the individuals in a primary care practice, and effectiveness in the community may differ from efficacy as measured in an RCT.

- The potential exists for misinterpretation of clinical trial results. Analysis of endpoints not specified at the outset, or post hoc or subgroup analysis, should be viewed as hypothesis-generating rather than hypothesis-testing.
STATEMENT OF ASSUMPTIONS

The panel has made every attempt to base its recommendations on published evidence, with particular attention to RCTs. Data from RCTs provide the strongest evidence regarding the impact of an intervention. The RCT literature predominantly describes short-term outcomes (< 1 year), although there are a small number of published RCTs of intermediate and long-term treatment and maintenance of weight loss. The panel chose to examine RCTs lasting 4 months or longer as their first priority. However, there are some 3-month studies included in the diet and pharmacotherapy sections.

Evidence of beneficial effects of weight reduction on risk factors and on diseases with which obesity is associated, and evidence of the association of obesity and mortality, are also available in the non-RCT epidemiological literature. Therefore, although the treatment recommendations in these guidelines are derived primarily from RCT evidence, they also come in part from the considered judgment of the expert panel members who weighed the non-RCT epidemiological evidence.

In setting forth its recommendations, the panel assumes that, for most individuals, the benefits of weight loss on overall health outweigh the harmful effects, and that weight loss can be maintained in many individuals with resulting long-term health benefits. The recommendations apply to all segments of the adult population, although apparent differences in applicability have been considered and some guidance is provided with respect to certain sectors of the population such as the elderly and in clinical situations. This additional guidance is in the form of notations within the text and is sometimes supplemented by an appendix (Appendix III).

INTENDED USERS OF THESE GUIDELINES

These guidelines were developed primarily for use by physicians and associated health professionals in clinical practice. They should also be useful to managed care organizations or other groups that define benefit plans for patients or handle health care resources. Users of these guidelines are encouraged to note text and appendix references to situations in which weight reduction treatment may be contraindicated or may involve special treatment techniques or safety considerations (e.g., in older adults or in certain sociocultural contexts).

These guidelines also provide a state-of-the-art review of the scientific basis of the relation between obesity and major disease endpoints and of the scientific rationale for the management of the overweight and obese patients. The systematic assessment of the literature contained in this document should be a valuable resource to health care policy makers and clinical investigators.
OVER WEIGHT AND OBESITY: BACKGROUND

HEALTH AND ECONOMIC COSTS

In 1973, and again in 1977, the John E. Fogarty International Center at the National Institutes of Health (NIH), as part of its preventive medicine series, sponsored two conferences that dealt with obesity as a public health problem; controversy was apparent regarding the cause-and-effect relationship between obesity and ill health. In 1985, an NIH Consensus Development Conference was held on the health implications of obesity. This conference provided important national recognition that obesity is a serious health condition that leads to increased morbidity and mortality. The Consensus Development Conference concluded that both prevention and treatment of obesity were medical priorities in the United States. In that conference, the terms ‘overweight’ and ‘obesity’ were defined as part of a continuum of increasing health risk.

In 1990, the Nation’s health goals for the year 2000 were set forth with the release of Healthy People 2000, in which a national goal to reduce the prevalence of overweight was articulated. In 1993, the Deputy Assistant Secretary for Health (J. Michael McGinnis) and the former Director of the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) (William Foege) co-authored a journal article, “Actual Causes of Death in the U.S.” It concluded that a combination of dietary factors and sedentary activity patterns accounts for at least 300,000 deaths each year, and, obesity was a key contributor. In 1995, the Institute of Medicine issued a report that expressed concern about the growing prevalence of overweight and obesity in this country, and suggested ways to evaluate various weight loss and weight maintenance programs available to U.S. consumers.

1. Prevalence and Time Trends

Nationally representative U.S. health examination surveys, in which weight and height were measured in samples of the population, date back to 1960. Beginning with the Second National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey (NHANES II) (1976-1980), the definition of overweight that has been used to compare these epidemiologic surveys has been a statistical one that corresponded to the 85th percentile of body mass index (BMI) for men and women aged 20 through 29 years in NHANES II with no particular relation to a specific increase in disease risk. Adults in these surveys have been categorized as overweight with a BMI ≥ 27.8 kg/m² for men and ≥ 27.3 kg/m² for women. The rationale for using persons aged 20 to 29 years as the reference population is supported largely by the observation that the increases in body weight after age 29 that commonly occur with aging are attributable primarily to fat accumulation. However, the BMI levels used for the definition of overweight and obesity are somewhat arbitrary, since the relationship between body weight and disease risk is continuous with the exception of the extremely underweight: disease risk increases as weight increases.

Figure 1 depicts data from several NHANES surveys using the panel’s definition of over-
weight as a BMI of 25 to 29.9 kg/m² and of obesity as a BMI of ≥ 30 kg/m². From 1960 to 1994, the prevalence of overweight increased slightly from 37.8 to 39.4 percent in men and from 23.6 to 24.7 percent in women (National Center for Health Statistics/CDC) 48. In men and women together, overweight increased from 30.5 to 32.0 percent. 48 During the same time period, however, the prevalence of obesity increased from 10.4 to 19.9 percent in men and from 15.1 to 24.9 percent in women. In men and women together, obesity increased from 12.8 to 22.5 percent. Most of the increase occurred in the past decade. In addition to adults, obesity in U.S. children increased markedly as well 49 (see Appendix III) and, if unchecked, portends an even greater increase in adult obesity in the future.

Table II-1 shows the combined prevalence of overweight and obesity, defined as a BMI of ≥ 25.0 kg/m², among persons aged 20 to 80 plus years, by age, race/ethnicity, and gender in the United States, 1960 to 1994. 48 The increase in overweight and obesity appears to have occurred among U.S. adults across all ages, genders, and racial/ethnic groups. The most recent NHANES III surveys, conducted from 1988-1994, reported that 59.4 percent of men and 50.7 percent of women in the United States are overweight or obese. The prevalence is much higher in non-Hispanic Black women (66.0 percent), in Mexican-American women (65.9 percent), and in Mexican-American men (63.9 percent).

Using the definition of obesity as a BMI of ≥ 30 kg/m², Table II-2 shows that in the United States, 19.5 percent of men and 25.0 percent of

![Figure 1. Age-Adjusted Prevalence of Overweight (BMI 25-29.9) and Obesity (BMI ≥30)](image-url)
### TABLE II-1:

**Combined Prevalence of Overweight and Obesity (BMI ≥ 25.0 kg/m²) Among Adults Age 20 to 80+ Years, by Gender, Race/Ethnicity, and Age: United States, 1960-1994.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Both Sexes</td>
<td>43.3</td>
<td>46.1</td>
<td>46.0</td>
<td>54.9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Men</td>
<td>48.2</td>
<td>52.9</td>
<td>51.4</td>
<td>59.4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Women</td>
<td>38.7</td>
<td>39.7</td>
<td>40.8</td>
<td>50.7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White men</td>
<td>48.8</td>
<td>53.7</td>
<td>52.3</td>
<td>61.0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White women</td>
<td>36.1</td>
<td>37.6</td>
<td>38.4</td>
<td>49.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Black men</td>
<td>43.1</td>
<td>48.9</td>
<td>49.0</td>
<td>56.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Black women</td>
<td>57.0</td>
<td>57.6</td>
<td>61.0</td>
<td>65.8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White, non-Hispanic men</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White, non-Hispanic women</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Black, non-Hispanic men</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Black, non-Hispanic women</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mexican-American men</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mexican-American women</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Age and gender-specific categories:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Men</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20-29</td>
<td>39.9</td>
<td>38.6</td>
<td>37.0</td>
<td>43.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30-39</td>
<td>49.6</td>
<td>58.1</td>
<td>52.6</td>
<td>58.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40-49</td>
<td>53.6</td>
<td>63.6</td>
<td>60.3</td>
<td>65.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50-59</td>
<td>54.1</td>
<td>58.4</td>
<td>60.8</td>
<td>73.0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60-69</td>
<td>52.9</td>
<td>55.6</td>
<td>57.4</td>
<td>70.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70-79</td>
<td>36.0</td>
<td>52.7*</td>
<td>53.3*</td>
<td>63.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80+</td>
<td>N/A**</td>
<td>N/A**</td>
<td>N/A**</td>
<td>50.6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Women</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20-29</td>
<td>17.0</td>
<td>23.2</td>
<td>25.0</td>
<td>33.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30-39</td>
<td>32.8</td>
<td>35.0</td>
<td>36.8</td>
<td>47.0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40-49</td>
<td>42.3</td>
<td>44.6</td>
<td>44.4</td>
<td>52.7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50-59</td>
<td>55.0</td>
<td>52.2</td>
<td>52.8</td>
<td>64.4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60-69</td>
<td>63.1</td>
<td>56.2</td>
<td>56.5</td>
<td>64.0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70-79</td>
<td>57.4</td>
<td>55.9*</td>
<td>58.2*</td>
<td>57.9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80+</td>
<td>N/A**</td>
<td>N/A**</td>
<td>N/A**</td>
<td>50.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Prevalence for age 70 to 74 years  ** Not available
women are obese. The prevalence of obesity is much higher in minority women, being 36.7 percent in non-Hispanic Black women and 33.3 percent in Mexican-American women.

2. Demographic Variations in Overweight and Obesity Prevalence

Although NHANES III data show that the prevalence of overweight and obesity is much higher in African-American and Mexican-American women than in white women or in men, these data provide ethnicity-specific estimates of overweight and obesity prevalence for only three racial-ethnic groups: non-Hispanic whites, non-Hispanic blacks, and Mexican-Americans. Examination survey data indicating a high overweight and obesity prevalence in other ethnic groups (e.g., for Puerto Ricans and Cuban-Americans) are available from the Hispanic HANES (HHANES) (1982-1984) and for American Indians and Pacific-Islander Americans, from smaller population-specific studies (see Appendix III). The prevalence of overweight and obesity is generally higher for men and women in racial-ethnic minority populations than in U.S. whites, with the exception of Asian-Americans, for whom overweight and obesity prevalence is lower than in the general population. In the 1982-1984 HHANES, the age-adjusted prevalence of a BMI of ≥27.3 in Puerto Rican women was 40 percent. The Strong Heart Study reported the average prevalence of overweight using BMI ≥27.8 or ≥27.3 for men and women, respectively, in three groups of American Indians studied during 1988-1989 as follows: in Arizona, 67 percent of the men and 80 percent of the women; in Oklahoma, 67 percent of the men and 71 percent of the women; and in South Dakota and North Dakota, 54 percent of the men and 66 percent of the women.

Women in the United States with low incomes or low education are more likely to be obese than those of higher socioeconomic status; the association of socioeconomic status with obesity is less consistent in men (Appendix III). Obesity is less common after the age of 70 among both men and women, possibly due to a progressive decrease in BMI with increasing age past the fifth decade or to an excess in mortality associated with increasing BMI in the presence of increasing age.

3. Economic Costs of Overweight and Obesity

Alarm about the increasing prevalence of overweight and obesity in the United States in recent years centers on the link between obesity and increased health risks, which translates into increased medical care and disability costs. The total cost attributable to obesity amounted to $99.2 billion in 1995. Approximately $51.6 billion of these dollars were direct medical costs associated with diseases attributable to obesity. The direct costs also associated with obesity represent 5.7 percent of the national health expenditure within the United States. The indirect costs attributable to obesity are $47.6 billion and are comparable to the economic costs of cigarette smoking. Indirect costs represent the value of lost output caused by morbidity and mortality, and may have a greater impact than direct costs at the personal and societal levels.

Although a comprehensive cost analysis of obesity is beyond the scope of this panel, a systematic review of the literature identified studies estimating the current economic burden of obesity in several Western countries. Published estimates of the economic costs of obesity such as those noted above use the prevalence-based approach, assuming that obesity is causally related to a range of chronic illnesses. Estimating the economic benefits of weight loss requires details of long-term weight maintenance and the time course of risk reduction following weight loss, and ultimately must also consider the costs of treatment to reduce weight.
TABLE II-2:

**Prevalence of Obesity (BMI ≥ 30.0 kg/m²) Among Adults Age 20 to 80+ Years, by Gender, Race/Ethnicity, and Age: United States, 1960-1994.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Both Sexes</td>
<td>12.8</td>
<td>14.1</td>
<td>14.4</td>
<td>22.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Men</td>
<td>10.4</td>
<td>11.8</td>
<td>12.2</td>
<td>19.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Women</td>
<td>15.1</td>
<td>16.1</td>
<td>16.3</td>
<td>25.0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White men</td>
<td>10.1</td>
<td>11.4</td>
<td>12.0</td>
<td>20.0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White women</td>
<td>13.7</td>
<td>14.7</td>
<td>14.9</td>
<td>23.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Black men</td>
<td>13.9</td>
<td>15.9</td>
<td>15.2</td>
<td>20.6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Black women</td>
<td>25.0</td>
<td>28.6</td>
<td>30.2</td>
<td>36.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White, non-Hispanic men</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>12.0</td>
<td>19.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White, non-Hispanic women</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>14.8</td>
<td>22.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Black, non-Hispanic men</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>15.0</td>
<td>20.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Black, non-Hispanic women</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>30.0</td>
<td>36.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mexican-American men</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>15.4</td>
<td>20.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mexican-American women</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>25.4</td>
<td>33.3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Age and gender-specific categories:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Men</th>
<th>20-29</th>
<th>9.0</th>
<th>8.0</th>
<th>8.1</th>
<th>12.5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>30-39</td>
<td>10.4</td>
<td>13.3</td>
<td>12.1</td>
<td>17.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>40-49</td>
<td>11.9</td>
<td>14.2</td>
<td>16.4</td>
<td>23.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>50-59</td>
<td>13.4</td>
<td>15.3</td>
<td>14.3</td>
<td>28.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>60-69</td>
<td>7.7</td>
<td>10.3</td>
<td>13.5</td>
<td>24.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>70-79</td>
<td>8.6</td>
<td>11.1</td>
<td>13.6</td>
<td>20.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>80+</td>
<td>N/A**</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>8.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Women</th>
<th>20-29</th>
<th>6.1</th>
<th>8.2</th>
<th>9.0</th>
<th>14.6</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>30-39</td>
<td>12.1</td>
<td>15.1</td>
<td>16.8</td>
<td>25.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>40-49</td>
<td>17.1</td>
<td>17.6</td>
<td>18.1</td>
<td>26.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>50-59</td>
<td>20.4</td>
<td>22.0</td>
<td>22.6</td>
<td>35.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>60-69</td>
<td>27.2</td>
<td>24.0</td>
<td>22.0</td>
<td>29.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>70-79</td>
<td>21.9</td>
<td>21.0</td>
<td>19.4</td>
<td>25.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>80+</td>
<td>N/A**</td>
<td>N/A**</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>15.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Prevalence for age 70 to 74 years  ** Not available
Prevention of Overweight and Obesity

Prevention of overweight and obesity is as important as treatment. Prevention includes primary prevention of overweight or obesity itself, secondary prevention or avoidance of weight regain following weight loss, and prevention of further weight increases in obese individuals unable to lose weight. 44, 64

National and international observational data suggest that environmental and behavioral factors are likely to be important in the tendency of individuals within and between populations to be obese during childhood or to gain weight progressively with age during adulthood. 65 These factors are also influenced by the genetic makeup of individuals. There has been a paucity of intervention research to demonstrate how these factors can be manipulated to prevent obesity. 64 In two community studies, namely the Minnesota Heart Health Program and the Stanford Five City Study, multifaceted weight loss and weight control programs within the community were not associated with prevention of weight gain in longitudinally followed cohorts. 66 In another community study, the Pawtucket Heart Health Program, BMI levels did not change in the intervention cities while they increased in the comparison cities. 67 One obesity prevention study of American Indian children who are at high risk of becoming obese is under way. 68 Otherwise, the only long-term report suggesting an effective approach to obesity prevention is from follow-up of obese children in an experimental study in which they had been treated with or without a family-oriented treatment program. Long-term follow-up (10 years) of these children supported the importance of family involvement in reducing the progression of obesity. 69 One population-based randomized controlled pilot study of obesity prevention suggests that programs for weight gain prevention are feasible and effective in adults. 54 Another study in China has shown that the prevention of weight gain through diet, physical activity, and their combination can help prevent diabetes. 70

It has been suggested that primary prevention of obesity should include environmentally based strategies that address major societal contributors to over-consumption of calories and inadequate physical activity such as food marketing practices, transportation patterns, and lack of opportunities for physical activity during the workday. 71, 72 People at lower socioeconomic levels living in urban areas also lack access to physical activity sites. Such strategies will be essential for effective initial and long-term prevention of obesity for large numbers of individuals and for the community at large. Research is needed to clarify the role of societal policies, procedures, laws, and other factors that serve as disincentives to lifelong caloric balance. The importance of obesity prevention needs to be brought to the attention of health care payors and practitioners, employers, educators, and public officials as an important priority to be addressed in policies, programs, and direct services to individuals and families. The development and implementation of appropriate policies and programs will require outcomes research that identifies effective weight gain prevention approaches. These programs must be useful for multiple settings, including health care facilities, schools, worksites, community and religious institutions, and be applicable to a broad population. In the end, efforts should be made to make the general public more aware of the need to prevent overweight and obesity.

Efforts to understand the genetic, developmental, environmental, and behavioral underpinnings of obesity and to mount successful prevention strategies are particularly critical for populations in which overweight and obesity and related health problems such as diabetes are disproportionately prevalent; for example, women in lower socioeconomic groups and women and sometimes men in many racial/ethnic minority
populations as described in Chapter 2.A.2 of this report. Public health approaches for preventing obesity, that is, approaches designed to reduce the difficulty for any given individual of adopting healthful eating and activity patterns, will particularly benefit the socially disadvantaged, who—compared to the more advantaged—may have less access to preventive health services and fewer feasible options for making changes in their daily routines and lifestyles. 73-75

Primary care practitioners are an important element in preventing and managing obesity in the United States. Prevention of overweight and obesity in primary care settings is compatible with efforts to prevent their health consequences, through control of dyslipidemia, high blood pressure, and type 2 diabetes. Thus, both the quality and quantity of life may be enhanced through preventive strategies. As detailed elsewhere in this report, high blood pressure, high blood cholesterol, and type 2 diabetes should be aggressively treated in overweight patients and may be treated prior to and in conjunction with weight loss.

HEALTH RISKS OF OVERWEIGHT AND OBESITY

1. Morbidity
Above a BMI of 20 kg/m², morbidity for a number of health conditions increases as BMI increases. Higher morbidity in association with overweight and obesity has been observed for hypertension, 2-6, 76-80 type 2 diabetes, 7, 8, 10, 81, 82, 84-89 coronary heart disease (CHD), 11,42,86,88,90 stroke, 11-13 gallbladder disease, 14,15 osteoarthritis, 16-18, 91-95 sleep apnea and respiratory problems 21, 96-98 and some types of cancer (endometrial, breast, prostate, and colon). 107-115 Obesity is also associated with complications of pregnancy, menstrual irregularities, hirsutism, stress incontinence, and psychological disorders (depression). 112, 116-128

The nature of obesity-related health risks is similar in all populations, although the specific level of risk associated with a given level of overweight or obesity may vary with race/ethnicity, and also with age, gender, and societal conditions. For example, the absolute risk of morbidity in chronic conditions such as CHD is highest in the aged population, while the relative risk of having CHD in obese versus nonobese individuals is highest in the middle adult years. 129-131

A high prevalence of diabetes mellitus in association with obesity is observed consistently across races/ethnicities, while the relative prevalence of hypertension and CHD in obese versus nonobese populations varies between groups.

The health risks of overweight and obesity are briefly described below:

1.a. Hypertension
Data from NHANES III show that the age-adjusted prevalence of high blood pressure increases progressively with higher levels of BMI in men and women (Figure 2). 2 High blood pressure is defined as mean systolic blood pressure ≥ 140 mm Hg, or mean diastolic blood pressure ≥ 90 mm Hg, or currently taking antihypertensive medication. The prevalence of high blood pressure in adults with BMI ≥ 30 is 38.4 percent for men and 32.2 percent for women, respectively, compared with 18.2 percent for men and 16.5 percent for women with BMI < 25, a relative risk of 2.1 and 1.9 for men and women, respectively. The direct and independent association between blood pressure and BMI or weight has been shown in numerous cross-sectional studies 3-5, including the large international study of salt (INTERSALT) carried out in more than 10,000 men and women. 6 INTERSALT reported that a 10 kg (22 lb) higher body weight is associated with 3.0 mm Hg higher systolic and 2.3 mm Hg higher diastolic blood pressure. 6 These differences in blood pressure translate into an estimated 12 percent increased risk for CHD and 24 percent
increased risk for stroke. Positive associations have also been shown in prospective studies.  

Obesity and hypertension are co-morbid risk factors for the development of cardiovascular disease. The pathophysiology underlying the development of hypertension associated with obesity includes sodium retention and associated increases in vascular resistance, blood volume, and cardiac output. These cardiovascular abnormalities associated with obesity are believed to be related to a combination of increased sodium retention, increased sympathetic nervous system activity, alterations of the renin-angiotensin system and insulin resistance. The precise mechanism whereby weight loss results in a decrease in blood pressure is unknown. However, it is known that weight loss is associated with a reduction in vascular resistance, total blood volume and cardiac output, an improvement in insulin resistance, a reduction in sympathetic nervous system activity, and suppression of the activity of the renin angiotensin aldosterone system. 

1.b. Dyslipidemia, manifested by: 

High total cholesterol

The relationship of the age-adjusted prevalence of high total cholesterol, defined as ≥240 mg/dL (6.21 mmol/L), to BMI from NHANES III is shown in Figure 3. At each BMI level, the prevalence of high blood cholesterol is greater in women than in men. In a smaller sample, higher body weight is associated with higher levels of total serum cholesterol in both men and women at levels of BMI > 25. Several large longitudinal studies also provide evidence that overweight, obesity and weight gain are associat-

---

Figure 2. NHANES III Age-Adjusted Prevalence of Hypertension* According to Body Mass Index

* Defined as mean systolic blood pressure ≥140 mm Hg, mean diastolic as ≥90 mm Hg, or currently taking antihypertensive medication.

ed with increased cholesterol levels. In women, the incidence of hypercholesterolemia also increases with increasing BMI. In addition, the pattern of fat distribution appears to affect cholesterol levels independently of total weight. Total cholesterol levels are usually higher in persons with predominant abdominal obesity, defined as a waist-to-hip circumference ratio of ≥ 0.8 for women and ≥ 1.0 for men.

High triglycerides
The strong association of triglyceride levels with BMI has been shown in both cross-sectional and longitudinal studies, for both sexes and all age groups. In three adult age groups, namely 20 to 44 years, 45 to 59 years, and 60 to 74 years, higher levels of BMI, ranging from 21 or less to more than 30, have been associated with increasing triglyceride levels; the difference in triglycerides ranged from 61 to 65 mg/dL (0.68 to 0.74 mmol/L) in women and 62 to 118 mg/dL (0.70 to 1.33 mmol/L) in men.

Low high-density lipoprotein cholesterol
The age-adjusted prevalence of low high-density lipoprotein (HDL)-cholesterol in relation to BMI levels, based on NHANES III data, is shown in Figure 4. HDL-cholesterol levels at all ages and weights are lower in men than in women. Although low HDL-cholesterol in this study was defined as < 35 mg/dL (0.91 mmol/L) in men and < 45 mg/dL (1.16 mmol/L) in women, the panel accepts the definition of low HDL-cholesterol as < 35 mg/dL for men and women used by the National Cholesterol Education Program's Second Report of the Expert Panel on the Detection, Evaluation, and Treatment of High Blood Cholesterol in Adults (Adult Treatment Panel II Report). Cross-sectional studies have reported that HDL-cholesterol levels are lower in men and women with higher BMI. Longitudinal studies have found that changes in BMI are associated with changes in HDL-cholesterol. A BMI change of 1 unit is associated with an HDL-cholesterol change of 1.1 mg/dL for young adult men and an HDL-cholesterol change of 0.69 mg/dL for young adult women.

Normal to elevated low-density lipoprotein cholesterol
The link between total serum cholesterol and CHD is largely due to low-density lipoprotein (LDL). A high-risk LDL-cholesterol is defined as a serum concentration of ≥ 160 mg/dL. This lipoprotein is the predominant atherogenic lipoprotein and is therefore the primary target of cholesterol-lowering therapy. Cross-sectional data suggest that LDL-cholesterol levels are higher by 10 to 20 mg/dL in relation to a 10 unit difference in BMI, from levels of 20 to 30 kg/m². According to extensive epidemiological data, a 10 mg/dL rise in LDL-cholesterol corresponds to approximately a 10 percent increase in CHD risk over a period of 5 to 10 years.

Small, dense low-density lipoprotein particles
Few large-scale epidemiological data are available on small, dense LDL particles. Clinical studies have shown that small, dense LDL particles are particularly atherogenic and tend to be present in greater proportion in hypertriglyceridemic patients with insulin resistance syndrome associated with abdominal obesity.

1.c. Diabetes Mellitus
The increased risk of diabetes as weight increases has been shown by prospective studies in Norway, the United States, Sweden, and Israel. More recently, the Nurses' Health Study, using data based on self-reported weights, found that the risk of developing type 2 diabetes increases as BMI increases from a BMI as low as 22. Since women in particular tend to under-report weight, the actual BMI values associated with these risks are likely to be higher than the Nurses' Health Study data would suggest. An association between type 2 diabetes and increasing relative weight is also observed in popula-
tions at high risk for obesity and diabetes, such as in American Indians. In recent studies, the development of type 2 diabetes has been found to be associated with weight gain after age 18 in both men and women. The relative risk of diabetes increases by approximately 25 percent for each additional unit of BMI over 22 kg/m². In addition, in a prospective study representative of the U.S. population, it was recently estimated that 27 percent of new cases of diabetes was attributable to weight gain in adulthood of 5 kg (11 lb) or more. Both cross-sectional and longitudinal studies show that abdominal obesity is a major risk factor for type 2 diabetes.

1.d. Coronary Heart Disease
Observational studies have shown that overweight, obesity, and excess abdominal fat are directly related to cardiovascular risk factors, including high levels of total cholesterol, LDL-cholesterol, triglycerides, blood pressure, fibrinogen and insulin, and low levels of HDL-cholesterol. Plasminogen activator inhibitor-1 causing impaired fibrinolytic activity is elevated in persons with abdominal obesity. Overweight, obesity, and abdominal fat are also associated with increased morbidity and mortality from CHD.

Recent studies have shown that the risks of nonfatal myocardial infarction and CHD death increase with increasing levels of BMI. Risks are lowest in men and women with BMIs of 22 or less and increase with even modest elevations of BMI. In the Nurses’ Health Study, which controlled for age, smoking, parental history of CHD, menopausal status, and hormone use, rel-

![Figure 3. NHANES III Age-Adjusted Prevalence of High Blood Cholesterol* According to Body Mass Index](image)
ative risks for CHD were twice as high at BMIs of 25 to 28.9, and more than three times as high at BMIs of 29 or greater, compared with BMIs of less than 21. Weight gains of 5 to 8 kg (11 to 17.6 lb) increased CHD risk (nonfatal myocardial infarction and CHD death) by 25 percent, and weight gains of 20 kg (44 lb) or more increased risk more than 2.5 times in comparison with women whose weight was stable within a range of 5 kg (11 lb). In British men, CHD incidence increased at BMIs above 22 and an increase of 1 BMI unit was associated with a 10 percent increase in the rate of coronary events. Similar relationships between increasing BMI and CHD risk have been shown in Finnish, Swedish, Japanese, and U.S. populations.

A relationship between obesity and CHD has not always been found. Two reasons may account for this: the first is an inappropriate controlling for cholesterol, blood pressure, diabetes, and other risk factors in statistical analysis; and the second is that there was not an adequate control for the confounding effect of cigarette smoking on weight. People who smoke often have a lower body weight but more CHD.

1.e. Congestive Heart Failure
Overweight and obesity have been identified as important and independent risk factors for congestive heart failure (CHF) in a number of studies, including the Framingham Heart Study. CHF is a frequent complication of severe obesity and a major cause of death; duration of the obesity is a strong predictor of CHF. Since

Figure 4. NHANES III Age-Adjusted Prevalence of Low HDL-Cholesterol*
According to Body Mass Index

*Defined as <35 mg/dL in men and <45 mg/dL in women.
hypertension and type 2 diabetes are positively associated with increasing weight, the coexistence of these conditions facilitates the development of CHF. Data from the Bogalusa Heart Study demonstrate that excess weight may lead to acquisition of left ventricular mass beyond that expected from normal growth. Obesity can result in alterations in cardiac structure and function even in the absence of systemic hypertension or underlying heart disease. Ventricular dilatation and eccentric hypertrophy may result from elevated total blood volume and high cardiac output. Diastolic dysfunction from eccentric hypertrophy and systolic dysfunction from excessive wall stress result in so-called “obesity cardiomyopathy”. The sleep/apnea obesity hyperventilation syndrome occurs in 5 percent of severely obese individuals, and is potentially life-threatening. Extreme hypoxemia induced by obstructive sleep apnea syndrome may result in heart failure in the absence of cardiac dysfunction.

1.f. Stroke
The relationship of cerebrovascular disease to obesity and overweight has not been as well studied as the relationship to CHD. A report from the Framingham Heart Study suggested that overweight might contribute to the risk of stroke, independent of the known association of hypertension and diabetes with stroke. More recently published reports are based on larger samples and delineate the importance of stroke subtypes in assessing these relationships. They also attempt to capture all stroke events, whether fatal or nonfatal. These studies suggest distinct risk factors for ischemic stroke as compared to hemorrhagic stroke, and found overweight to be associated with the former, but not the latter. This may explain why studies that use only fatal stroke outcomes (and thus overrepresent hemorrhagic strokes) show only weak relationships between overweight and stroke. These recent prospective studies demonstrate that the risk of stroke shows a graded increase as BMI rises. For example, ischemic stroke risk is 75 percent higher in women with BMI > 27, and 137 percent higher in women with a BMI > 32, compared with women having a BMI < 21.

1.g. Gallstones
The risk of gallstones increases with adult weight. Risk of either gallstones or cholecystectomy is as high as 20 per 1,000 women per year when BMI is above 40, compared with 3 per 1,000 among women with BMI < 24. According to NHANES III data, the prevalence of gallstone disease among women increased from 9.4 percent in the first quartile of BMI to 25.5 percent in the fourth quartile of BMI. Among men, the prevalence of gallstone disease increased from 4.6 percent in the first quartile of BMI to 10.8 percent in the fourth quartile of BMI.

1.h. Osteoarthritis
Individuals who are overweight or obese increase their risk for the development of osteoarthritis. The association between increased weight and the risk for development of knee osteoarthritis is stronger in women than in men. In a study of twin middle-aged women, it was estimated that for every kilogram increase of weight, the risk of developing osteoarthritis increases by 9 to 13 percent. The twins with knee osteoarthritis were generally 3 to 5 kg (6.6 to 11 lb) heavier than the co-twin with no disease. An increase in weight is significantly associated with increased pain in weight-bearing joints. There is no evidence that the development of osteoarthritis leads to the subsequent onset of obesity. A decrease in BMI of 2 units or more during a 10-year period decreased the odds for developing knee osteoarthritis by more than 50 percent; weight gain was associated with a slight increase in risk. A randomized controlled trial of 6 months’ duration examined the effect of weight loss on
clinical improvement in patients with osteoarthritis. Patients taking phentermine had an average weight loss of 12.6 percent after 6 months while the control group had an average weight loss of 9.2 percent. There was improvement in pain-free range of motion and a decrease in analgesic use in association with weight loss; patients with knee disease showed a stronger association than those with hip disease. Similarly, improvement of joint pain was observed in individuals who had undergone gastric stapling, resulting in an average weight loss of 45 kg (99 lb). 94, 95

1.1. Sleep Apnea
Obesity, particularly upper body obesity, is a risk factor for sleep apnea and has been shown to be related to its severity. 19,20 The major pathophysiologic consequences of severe sleep apnea include arterial hypoxemia, recurrent arousals from sleep, increased sympathetic tone, pulmonary and systemic hypertension, and cardiac arrhythmias. 21 Most people with sleep apnea have a BMI > 30. 96,97 Large neck girth in both men and women who snore is highly predictive of sleep apnea. In general, men whose neck circumference is 17 inches or greater and women whose neck circumference is 16 inches or greater are at higher risk for sleep apnea. 99 Additional information on sleep apnea is included as Appendix IV.

1.1. Cancer

Colon Cancer
Many studies have found a positive relation between obesity and colon cancer in men but a weaker association in women. 8,22-24,99-106 More recent data from the Nurses’ Health Study suggest that the relationship between obesity and colon cancer in women may be similar to that seen in men. Twice as many women with a BMI of > 29 kg/m² had distal colon cancer as women with a BMI < 21 kg/m². 107 In men, the relationship between obesity and total colon cancer was weaker than that for distal colon cancer. Other data from the Nurses’ Health Study show a substantially stronger relationship between waist-to-hip ratio and the prevalence of colon polyps on sigmoidoscopy, than with BMI alone. 108 Even among leaner women, a high waist-to-hip ratio is also associated with significantly increased risk of colon polyps. 107

Breast Cancer
Epidemiologic studies consistently show that obesity is directly related to mortality from breast cancer, predominantly in postmenopausal women, 8 but inversely related to the incidence of premenopausal breast cancer. 109-112 Ten or more years after menopause, the premenopausal “benefit” of obesity has dissipated. 113 Among postmenopausal women, peripheral fat is the primary source of estrogens, the major modifiable risk factor for postmenopausal breast cancer. This crossover in the relationship of obesity with breast cancer, pre- and postmenopausally, complicates prevention messages for this common female cancer. Recent data from the Nurses’ Health Study, however, show that adult weight gain is positively related to risk of postmenopausal breast cancer. This relation is seen most clearly among women who do not use postmenopausal hormones. A gain of more than 20 lb from age 18 to midlife doubles a woman’s risk of breast cancer. Even modest weight gains are positively related to risk of postmenopausal cancer. 114

Endometrial Cancer
Obesity increases the risk of endometrial cancer. The risk is three times higher among obese women (BMI ≥ 30 kg/m²) compared to normal-weight women. 115 However, the absolute risk of this condition is low when compared to breast cancer, heart disease, and diabetes. Adult weight gain is also related to increased risk. 115
Gallbladder Cancer
Obesity is related to the risk of gallbladder cancer, particularly among women. Using a weight index of 100 as the average weight with a corresponding mortality ratio of 1.0 for the cohort, mortality ratios were 1.16 at a weight index of 120 to 129, 1.22 at 130 to 139, and 1.53 at ≥140.

1.k. Obesity and Women’s Reproductive Health
Menstrual Function and Fertility
Obesity in premenopausal women is associated with menstrual irregularity and amenorrhea. As part of the Nurses’ Health Study, a case control study suggested that the greater the BMI at age 18 years, even at levels lower than those considered obese, the greater the risk of subsequent ovulatory infertility. The most prominent condition associated with abdominal obesity is polycystic ovarian syndrome, a combination of infertility, menstrual disturbances, hirsutism, abdominal hyperandrogenism, and anovulation. This syndrome is strongly associated with hyperinsulinemia and insulin resistance.

Pregnancy
Pregnancy can result in excessive weight gain and retention. The 1988 National Maternal and Infant Survey observed that 41.6 percent of women reported retaining ≥9 lb of their gained weight during pregnancy, with 33.8 percent reporting ≥14 lb of retained weight gain. The retained weight gain associated with pregnancy was corroborated by the study of Coronary Artery Risk Development in Young Adults (CARDIA). As a result of their first pregnancy, both black and white women had a sustained weight gain of 2 to 3 kg (4.4 to 6.6 lb) of body weight. Another study on a national cohort of women followed for 10 years reported that weight gain associated with childbearing ranged from 1.7 kg (3.7 lb) for those having one live birth during the study to 2.2 kg (4.9 lb) for those having three. In addition, higher prepregnancy weights have been shown to increase the risk of late fetal deaths.

Obesity during pregnancy is associated with increased morbidity for both the mother and the child. A tenfold increase in the prevalence of hypertension and a 10 percent incidence of gestational diabetes have been reported in obese pregnant women. Obesity also is associated with difficulties in managing labor and delivery, leading to a higher rate of induction and primary Caesarean section. Risks associated with anesthesia are higher in obese women, as there is greater tendency toward hypoxemia and greater technical difficulty in administering local or general anesthesia. Finally, obesity during pregnancy is associated with an increased risk of congenital malformations, particularly of neural tube defects.

A certain amount of weight gain during pregnancy is desirable. The fetus itself, expanded blood volume, uterine enlargement, breast tissue growth, and other products of conception generate an estimated 13 to 17 lb of extra weight. Weight gain beyond this, however, is predominantly maternal adipose tissue. It is this fat tissue that, in large measure, accounts for the postpartum retention of weight gained during pregnancy. In turn, this retention reflects a postpartum energy balance that does not lead to catabolism of the gained adipose tissue. In part, this may reflect reduced energy expenditure through decreased physical activity, even while caring for young children, but it may also reflect retention of the pattern of increased caloric intake acquired during pregnancy.

One difficulty in developing recommendations of optimal weight gain during pregnancy relates to the health of the infants. A balance must be achieved between high-birth-weight infants who may pose problems during delivery and who may face a higher rate of Caesarean sections and low-birth-weight infants who face a higher
infant mortality rate. However, data from the Pregnancy Nutrition Surveillance System from the CDC showed that very overweight women would benefit from a reduced weight gain during pregnancy to help reduce the risk for high-birth-weight infants.

The 1990 Institute of Medicine report made recommendations concerning maternal weight gain. It recommended that each woman have her BMI measured and recorded at the time of entry into prenatal care. For women with a BMI of less than 20, the target weight gain should be 0.5 kg (1.1 lb) of weight gain per week during the second and third trimester. For a woman whose BMI is greater than 26, the weight gain target is 0.3 kg (0.7 lb) per week during the last two trimesters.

Women who are overweight or obese at the onset of pregnancy are advised to gain less total weight during the pregnancy (see box above).

### 1.1. Psychosocial Aspects of Overweight and Obesity

A number of reviews have been published on the psychosocial aspects of obesity. The specific topics that will be reviewed here include social stigmatization, psychopathology, binge eating, and body image perceptions.

#### Social Stigmatization

In American and other Westernized societies there are powerful messages that people, especially women, should be thin, and that to be fat is a sign of poor self-control. Negative attitudes about the obese have been reported in children and adults in health care professionals, and in the overweight themselves.

People’s negative attitudes toward the obese often translate into discrimination in employment opportunities, college acceptance, less financial aid from their parents in paying for college, job earnings, rental availabilities, and opportunities for marriage.

Much of the research on the social stigma of obesity has suffered from methodological limitations. For example, a number of the early studies relied on line drawings rather than more lifelike representations of obese people and on checklists that forced one to make YES or NO choices. More importantly, there has been a lack of research that has looked at the impact of obesity in the context of other variables, such as physical attractiveness, the situational context, and the degree of obesity. In addition, social stigma toward the obese has primarily been assessed among white individuals. There is some evidence that members of other racial and ethnic groups are less harsh in their evaluation of obese persons. One study assessed 213 Puerto Rican immigrants to the United States, and found a wide range of acceptable weights among them. Crandall found that Mexican students were sig-
significantly less concerned about their own weight and were more accepting of other obese people than were U.S. students. In addition, the degree of acceptance of obesity among people of lower education and income has not been well studied. Thus, these data are very incomplete with respect to racial and ethnic groups other than whites.

**Psychopathology and Obesity**

Research relating obesity to psychological disorders and emotional distress is based on community studies and clinical studies of patients seeking treatment. In general, community-based studies in the United States have not found significant differences in psychological status between the obese and nonobese. However, several recent European studies in general populations do suggest a relationship between obesity and emotional problems. Thus, it may be premature to state that there is no association between obesity and psychopathology or emotional distress in the general population. More focused, hypothesis-driven, and long-term studies are needed.

Overweight people seeking weight loss treatment may, in clinic settings, show emotional disturbances. In a review of dieting and depression, there was a high incidence of emotional illness symptoms in outpatients treated for obesity. However, several factors influenced these emotional responses, including childhood onset versus adult onset of obesity (those with childhood onset obesity appear more vulnerable). Another study that compared different eating disorder groups found that obese patients seeking treatment showed considerable psychopathology, most prominently mild to severe depression. Sixty-two percent of the obese group seeking treatment showed clinically significant elevations on the depression subscale of the Minnesota Multiphasic Personality Inventory, and 37 percent of this same group showed a score of 20 or higher (indicating clinical depression) on the Beck Depression Inventory. Focusing on depression was considered an important component of the weight loss program. Another study compared obese people who had not sought treatment to an obese group that had sought treatment in a professional, hospital-based program, and to normal weight controls. Again, obese individuals seeking treatment reported more psychopathology and binge eating compared to the other groups. Both obese groups reported more symptoms of distress than did normal weight controls. The authors suggest that the obese population is not a homogenous group, and thus, may not respond in the same way to standardized treatment programs. In particular, obese individuals seeking treatment in clinic settings are more likely than obese individuals not seeking treatment and normal controls to report more psychopathology and binge eating.

**Binge Eating Disorder**

Binge eating disorder (BED) is characterized by eating larger amounts of food than most people would eat in a discrete time period (e.g., 2 hours) with a sense of lack of control during these episodes. It is estimated to occur in 20 to 50 percent of individuals who seek specialized obesity treatment. In community-based samples, the prevalence is estimated to be approximately 2 percent. Comparisons have been made between BED and bulimia nervosa (BN), an eating disorder characterized by recurrent and persistent binge eating, accompanied by the regular use of behaviors such as vomiting, fasting, or using laxatives. Studies comparing normal weight individuals who have BN with obese BED individuals have found that obese binge eaters are less likely to demonstrate dietary restraint and show few if any adverse reactions to moderate or severe dieting. Most obese binge eaters do not engage in inappropriate compensatory behaviors such as purging. Compared with BN, the demographic distribution of BED
is broader with respect to age, gender, and race while data suggest that BED is as common in African-American women as in white women. The difference between BED and BN is dramatic regarding gender. Very few men have BN, whereas the distribution is close to equal in BED.

Compared to obese nonbingers, obese individuals with BED tend to be heavier, report greater psychological distress, and are more likely to have experienced a psychiatric illness (especially affective disorders). They also report an earlier onset of obesity and a greater percentage of their lifetime on a diet. Some studies have shown histories of greater weight fluctuation or weight cycling in obese binge eaters compared with nonbingers, but others have not. These individuals are also more likely than nonbinging obese people to drop out of behavioral weight loss programs, and to regain weight more quickly.

Critics of behavioral treatment of obesity have argued that caloric restriction may cause or contribute to the episodes of binge eating and BN. Three studies have tested this hypothesis. Neither moderate nor severe calorific restriction exacerbated binge eating. All three studies showed that weight control treatment featuring caloric restriction significantly reduced the frequency of binge eating in these patients.

**Body Image**

Body image is defined as the perception of one’s own body size and appearance and the emotional response to this perception. Inaccurate perception of body size or proportion and negative emotional reactions to size perceptions contribute to poor body image. Obese individuals, especially women, tend to overestimate their body size.

People at greater risk for a poor body image are binge eaters, women, those who were obese during adolescence or with early onset of obesity, and those with emotional disturbances. It is no surprise, then, that in some groups of obese persons, these individuals are more dissatisfied and preoccupied with their physical appearance, and avoid more social situations due to their appearance. Body image dissatisfaction and the desire to improve physical appearance often drives individuals to seek weight loss. However, obese persons seeking weight reduction must come to terms with real limits in their biological and behavioral capacities to lose weight. Otherwise, weight loss attempts may only intensify the sense of failure and struggle that is already present among many obese individuals. For this reason, psychosocial interventions which incorporate strategies to improve body image may be helpful for those who want to lose weight and are very concerned about their physical appearance. A review of body image interventions in obese persons can be found in Rosen (1996).

Body image perceptions of individuals in various ethnic and racial groups may be different, on average, from those of the mainstream culture. There may be a similar range of attitudes but on a different scale; for example, it may take a much greater degree of overweight to elicit negative reactions. Differences in body image and weight-related concerns between black and white girls and women have been observed. In general, black girls and women report: less social pressure to be slim, fewer incidences of weight-related discrimination, less weight and body dissatisfaction, and greater acceptance of overweight than their white counterparts. College-age black women report less concern and fear about fatness, less drive to be thin, and less concern about dieting than do college-age white women. In addition, black women may ascribe some positive qualities to being large, such as having stamina, strength, and solidity, and are less likely to link body size to health
than white women. Black elementary school and high school girls were more likely to be trying to gain weight \cite{268,269} and less likely to be trying to lose weight as compared to white girls. \cite{269} Because of the above, it is possible that weight control initiatives may elicit different reactions from black and white women. Less is known about the relationship between obesity and body image disturbance in other racial and ethnic groups. \cite{270}

2. Overweight/Obesity and Morbidity in Minority Populations
The data on overweight and obesity in minority populations include men and women across a wide age range and geographic area. Relevant studies increasingly consist of well-designed, population-based surveys and longitudinal studies. These studies have standardized, objective measurements of overweight and obesity and risk factors or disease outcomes. There is now a wealth of evidence to demonstrate that overweight and obesity incidence (both generalized and abdominal) predisposes to chronic diseases in racial/ethnic minority populations as it does in whites, though the absolute risk may differ. \cite{51-52,271-284} Indications for treatment of overweight and obesity in minority populations are, therefore, the same as those for non-Hispanic whites. Apparent differences in the strength of association between obesity and disease in various populations are not necessarily relevant to individuals in clinical settings, and obesity should be treated in any situation in which excess weight is associated with an observable or probable risk of morbidity. In addition, from a public health perspective, the need for obesity prevention and treatment is particularly pressing in racial/ethnic minority populations because of the high proportion of overweight and obese persons in many such populations.

3. Obesity and Mortality
As stated in the introduction to the guidelines, in the majority of epidemiologic studies, mortality begins to increase with BMIs above 25 kg/m². \cite{28-32} The increase in mortality generally tends to be modest until a BMI of 30 kg/m² is reached. \cite{28,29,31,32} For persons with a BMI of 30 kg/m² or above, mortality rates from all causes, and especially from cardiovascular disease, are generally increased by 50 to 100 percent above that of persons with BMIs in the range of 20 to 25 kg/m². \cite{28,31,32} Three aspects of the association between obesity and mortality remain unresolved:

3.a. Association of Body Mass Index With Mortality
Many of the observational epidemiologic studies of BMI and mortality have reported a 'U-' or 'J-shaped' relationship between BMI and mortality. \cite{28} Mortality rates are elevated in persons with low BMI (usually below 20) as well as in persons with high BMI. \cite{28,31,32} In some studies, adjustment for factors that potentially confound the relationship between BMI and mortality, such as smoking status and pre-existing illness, trends to reduce the upturn in mortality rate at low BMI, \cite{31} but in a meta-analysis the higher mortality at low BMIs was not eliminated after adjustment for confounding factors. \cite{32} It is unclear whether the elevated mortality observed at low BMI is due to an artifact of incomplete control for confounding factors, \cite{285} inadequate body fat and/or inadequate body protein stores that result from unintentional weight loss, \cite{286} or individual genetic factors. Currently, there is no evidence that intentional weight gain in persons with low BMIs will lead to a reduction in mortality.

3.b. Association of Body Mass Index With Mortality in Older Adults
Many of the observational epidemiologic studies suggest that the relationship between BMI and mortality weakens with increasing age, especially among persons aged 75 and above. \cite{287,290} Several
factoors have been proposed to explain this observation. Older adults are more likely than younger adults to have diseases that both increase mortality and cause weight loss leading to lower body weight. In addition, as people age, they tend to have larger waist circumferences that increase their risk of mortality even at lower BMIs. Also, weight in middle age is positively related to risk of mortality in old age. The impact of smoking on body weight and mortality is likely to be much stronger in older adults because of the cumulative health effects of smoking.

BMI, which is an indirect estimate of adiposity, may underestimate adiposity in older adults whose BMI is similar to younger adults. It is also possible that persons most sensitive to the adverse health effects of obesity are more likely to have died before reaching older ages, resulting in older cohorts that are more “resistant” to the health effects of obesity. Recently, a 20-year prospective study of a nationally representative sample of U.S. adults aged 55 to 74 years suggested that lowest mortality occurs in the BMI range of 25 to 30. After adjusting for smoking status and pre-existing illness, lowest mortality occurred at a BMI of 24.5 in white men, 26.5 in white women, 27.0 in black men, and 29.8 in black women (see commentary on older adults on pages 90-91).

3.c. Association of Body Mass Index With Mortality in Ethnic Minorities

The levels of BMI associated with increased mortality are based on epidemiological studies of primarily white populations. The interest in confirming the association between BMI and mortality in other racial/ethnic groups stems partly from observations that lower-than-average total mortality has been observed among some populations with a high BMI level, and partly from observations that within certain populations there appears to be no effect of obesity at all or at the BMI levels that are associated with higher mortality in whites.

**African-Americans:**
Three small cohort studies of narrowly defined populations of African-Americans failed to show the expected association of BMI and mortality based on data from white populations. Although the shape of the association of BMI and mortality in two large, representative U.S. data sets (the National Health and Nutrition Examination Follow-up Study and the National Health Interview Survey) is similar for black and white males and females, the BMI-related increase in risk begins at a 1 to 3 kg/m² higher BMI level for blacks than for whites. For example, in the National Health and Nutrition Examination Follow-up Survey, the estimated BMI associated with minimum mortality was 27.1 for black men and 26.8 for black women, compared with 24.8 and 24.3, respectively, for white men and women. On the basis of these data, the use of the cutpoint of BMI ≥ 30 kg/m² for defining obesity is clearly applicable to African-Americans as well as to whites.

**Other Ethnic Minority Populations:**
Limited data relating obesity to mortality in American Indians were identified, but no data were found relating obesity to mortality in Hispanic-Americans, Asian-Americans, or Pacific Islanders. The lowest mortality rate among Pima men is observed at a BMI range of 35 to 40 kg/m² for men, and no relationship between BMI and mortality is observed among Pima women. Based on mortality data alone, it would be hard to justify using the same standard for defining obesity in populations, such as American Indians, among whom the mean BMI is much higher than in the general U.S. population. However, diabetes-related morbidity among obese American Indians is extremely high, and the overall age-specific mortality among American Indians is generally higher.
than in the U.S. general population. Thus, obesity in American Indians is associated with a compromised overall survival of the population. Although the data on mortality are still fragmentary for many minority populations, there are no studies that would support the exclusion of any racial/ethnic group from the current definitions of obesity. Secular trends in many populations in the United States and throughout the world have demonstrated that longstanding overweight and obesity eventually leads to the emergence of chronic diseases. Therefore, prevalent overweight and obesity cannot be ignored even where the associated health problems have not reached the level that would be expected on the basis of data for white populations.

**Weight Loss and Mortality**

A number of studies of “generic weight loss” (cause of weight loss unknown), “weight cycling” (cycles of weight loss followed by weight regain), and mortality have been published. In most, but not all, of these studies, generic weight loss and weight cycling are associated with increases in mortality. None of these studies, however, differentiated between intentional and unintentional weight loss. With the exception of the studies below, very little is currently known about factors related to intentional and unintentional weight loss in the general population or about the relationship between weight loss intention and mortality.

Two studies of factors related to weight loss intention have been carried out in the general population: French and colleagues assessed correlates of intentional and unintentional weight loss of > 20 lb in the Iowa Women’s Health Study, a cohort study of approximately 29,000 women with a mean age of about 65 years; and Meltzer and Everhart analyzed data on 1-year self-reported weight change from approximately 9,000 participants in the nationally representative U.S. National Health Interview Survey, aged 45 years and above. The results of these two studies suggest the following:

- In cross-sectional studies of weight loss recall, heavier persons are more likely to report intentional weight loss than unintentional weight loss, while the reverse is true for leaner persons;
- Intentional and unintentional weight losses occur with similar frequency in the U.S. population and contribute similarly to long-term weight fluctuation;
- The frequency of intentional weight loss is lower at older ages, while the frequency of unintentional weight loss is higher at older ages; and
- Unintentional weight loss occurs more often in persons who report that their health status is poor, who use medications for chronic health conditions, and who smoke.

To date, only three studies have examined the relationship between intentional weight loss and mortality. Singh and colleagues published results from a 1-year randomized controlled trial of a “cardioprotective diet” in East Indian patients hospitalized with recent myocardial infarction (mean age 50 years, mean BMI about 24 kg/m²). Although this study was not designed to specifically test the efficacy of intentional weight loss on lower mortality, the authors found that those who lost at least 0.5 kg (1.1 lb) had a 50 percent lower incidence of cardiac events and a 54 percent lower risk of overall mortality compared with counterparts who lost < 0.5 kg (1.1 lb).

Williamson and colleagues published a 12-year prospective observational study of weight loss and mortality that directly assessed weight loss intention. They analyzed data from 43,457 overweight (BMI > 27), never-smoking, white women ages 40 to 64 years. Mortality ratios were compared for women who intentionally...
lost weight with those for women who had no change in weight. In women with obesity-related comorbidities, intentional weight loss of any amount was associated with a statistically significant 20 percent reduction in all-cause mortality, primarily due to a significant 40 to 50 percent reduction in mortality from obesity-related cancers; diabetes-related mortality was also significantly reduced by 30 to 40 percent in those who intentionally lost weight. In women with no comorbidities, intentional weight loss was generally unrelated to mortality; however, after subdividing intentional weight loss by time interval, it was found that a loss of at least 20 lb that occurred within the previous year was associated with small to modest increases in mortality. The authors concluded that the association between intentional weight loss and longevity in middle-age overweight women depends on health status. In addition, preliminary evidence suggests that intentional weight loss in middle-age overweight men may be associated with a similar reduction of diabetes-related mortality as was observed in the overweight women.

The ongoing Swedish Obesity Study is a controlled trial of surgically induced weight loss and subsequent morbidity and mortality over a 10-year follow-up period (1,006 participants aged 37 to 57 years; initial BMI of 34 in men and 38 in women). Although the study is not randomized (participants self-select for surgery), the controls (who receive a behavioral weight loss program) are computer-matched to surgical participants on a large number of potential confounders including weight. In a preliminary abstract, the study reported the 2-year incidence rates shown in Table II-3.

These results for disease and risk factor incidences suggest that 10-year mortality will ultimately be lower in the surgical intervention group. Definitive mortality results have not been reported to date.

### Environment

The environment is a major determinant of overweight and obesity. Environmental influences on overweight and obesity are primarily related to food intake and physical activity behaviors. In countries like the United States, there is an overall abundance of palatable, calorie-dense food. In addition, aggressive and sophisticated food marketing in the mass media, supermarkets, and restaurants, and the large portions of food served outside the home, promote high calorie consumption. Many of our sociocultural traditions promote overeating and the preferential consumption of high calorie foods. For many people, even when caloric intake is

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Two-Year Incidence Rates</th>
<th>Control</th>
<th>Surgery</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Diabetes</td>
<td>16 percent</td>
<td>0.5 percent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypertriglyceridemia</td>
<td>23 percent</td>
<td>6.0 percent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low High-Density Lipoprotein Levels</td>
<td>16 percent</td>
<td>5.0 percent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
not above the recommended level, the number of calories expended in physical activity is insufficient to offset consumption. Mechanization limits the necessity of physical activity required to function in society. Many people are entrenched in sedentary daily routines consisting of sitting at work, sitting in traffic, and sitting in front of a television or a computer monitor for most of their waking hours.

In this obesity-promoting environment, individual attitudes and behaviors are critical in weight management. Many individuals may need extended treatment in clinical or community settings to enable them to cope with the complexities of long-term weight management, especially if there is a history of unsuccessful attempts at self-treatment. When the typical daily routine is so strongly biased towards promoting and perpetuating overweight and obesity, very high levels of knowledge, motivation, personal behavioral management skill, and lifestyle flexibility are required for an overweight or obesity-prone individual to avoid becoming overweight, or progressing to moderate or severe obesity.

Although there are undoubtedly some inter- and intrapopulation variations in the genetic predisposition to become overweight or obese, several lines of evidence suggest that genetic factors alone cannot explain the demographic and ethnic variations in overweight and obesity prevalence. For example, there is a difference in obesity prevalence among low- and high-income white women in industrialized societies. Other studies of populations, including migration studies, have shown an increase in average body weight in those who move from a traditional to a Westernized environment.

Culturally determined attitudes about food, physical activity, and factors that vary with income, education, and occupation may increase the level of difficulty in weight management. Body image concerns and other motivations for avoiding obesity or controlling weight within given limits also vary with ethnic background, age, socioeconomic status, and gender. Thus, the competence of practitioners in working with diverse sociocultural perspectives can be a critical factor in the success of obesity treatment. For a discussion of cultural issues in obesity treatment and related references, see Appendix III.

GENETIC INFLUENCE IN THE DEVELOPMENT OF OVERWEIGHT AND OBESITY

Obesity is a complex multifactorial chronic disease developing from interactive influences of numerous factors—social, behavioral, physiological, metabolic, cellular, and molecular. Genetic influences are difficult to elucidate and identification of the genes is not easily achieved in familial or pedigree studies. Furthermore, whatever the influence the genotype has on the etiology of obesity, it is generally attenuated or exacerbated by nongenetic factors.

A large number of twin, adoption, and family studies have explored the level of heritability of obesity; that is, the fraction of the population variation in a trait (e.g., BMI) that can be explained by genetic transmission. Recent studies of individuals with a wide range of BMIs, together with information obtained on their parents, siblings, and spouses, suggest that about 25 to 40 percent of the individual differences in body mass or body fat may depend on genetic factors. However, studies with identical twins reared apart suggest that the genetic contribution to BMI may be higher, i.e., about 70 percent. There are several other studies of monozygotic twins reared apart that yielded remarkably consistent results. Some of the reasons behind the different results obtained from twin versus family studies have been reported. The relative risk of obesity for first-degree relatives of overweight, moderately obese, or severely obese persons in comparison to the population prevalence of the condition...
reaches about 2 for overweight, 3 to 4 for moderate obesity, and 5 and more for more severe obesity. 337,338

Support for a role of specific genes in human obesity or body fat content has been obtained from studies of Mendelian disorders with obesity as one of the clinical features, single-gene rodent models, quantitative trait loci from crossbreeding experiments, association studies, and linkage studies. From the research currently available, several genes seem to have the capacity to cause obesity or to increase the likelihood of becoming obese. 339 The rodent obesity gene for leptin, a natural appetite-suppressant hormone, has been cloned 340 as has been its receptor. 341 In addition, other single gene mutants have been cloned. 341, 342 However, their relationship to human disease has not been established, except for one study describing two subjects with a leptin mutation. 342 This suggests that for most cases of human obesity, susceptibility genotypes may result from variations of several genes.

Severely or morbidly obese persons are, on the average, about 10 to 12 BMI units heavier than their parents and siblings. Several studies have reported that a single major gene for high body mass was transmitted from the parents to their children. The trend implies that a major recessive gene, accounting for about 20 to 25 percent of the variance, is influenced by age and has a frequency of about 0.2 to 0.3. 343 However, no gene(s) has (have) yet been identified. Evidence from several studies has shown that some persons are more susceptible to either weight gain or weight loss than others. 344,345 It is important for the practitioner to recognize that the phenomenon of weight gain cannot always be attributed to lack of adherence to prescribed treatment regimens.
WHY TREAT OVERWEIGHT AND OBESITY?

The recommendation to treat overweight and obesity is based not only on the previously presented evidence that shows overweight is associated with increased morbidity and mortality, but also on randomized controlled trial (RCT) evidence that weight loss reduces risk factors for disease. Thus, weight loss may help control diseases worsened by overweight and obesity and may also decrease the likelihood of developing these diseases. The evidence meeting the panel's inclusion criteria is presented in the following section in the form of evidence statements with a corresponding rationale for each statement. The details of the studies reviewed but not discussed here are provided in Appendix II.

Many of the RCTs examined by the panel included the use of pharmacotherapy for weight loss. When the panel began its deliberations in 1995, two weight loss drugs, fenfluramine and dexfenfluramine, were being used widely for long-term weight loss, i.e., 14 million prescriptions were given out over 1½ years. However, as of September 1997, the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) requested the voluntary withdrawal of these drugs from the market due to a reported association between valvular heart disease and the use of dexfenfluramine and fenfluramine alone or combined with phentermine. 761 In November 1997, the FDA approved the drug sibutramine hydrochloride monohydrate for the management of obesity, including weight loss and maintenance of weight loss when used in conjunction with a reduced-calorie diet. Thus, at the present time only one weight loss drug is available for long-term weight loss. (Note: FDA approval for orlistat is pending a resolution of labeling issues and results of Phase III trials.) However, due to rapidly evolving information regarding the use of pharmacotherapy for weight loss, the panel decided to present (below) their critique of those pharmacotherapy trials meeting their criteria for consideration.

1. Blood Pressure

To evaluate the effect of weight loss on blood pressure and hypertension, 76 articles reporting the results of RCTs were potentially eligible for inclusion. Sixty articles included lifestyle trials that studied diet and/or physical activity, and 16 articles were of pharmacotherapy trials. Dietary interventions included low-calorie diets and diets that promoted macronutrient composition changes, such as amount and type of dietary fat. Physical activity, when included, was used to help promote increased energy expenditure. These trials did not always control for other dietary factors that lower blood pressure, such as dietary salt, and the degree to which those taking the blood pressure measurements were blinded to the patient's change in weight.

Of the 35 lifestyle RCT articles deemed acceptable, 16 included hypertensive patients, 346-361 and 19 were conducted in individuals with normal or high-normal blood pressure. 362-380
1.a.(1). Lifestyle Trials in Hypertensive Patients

**Evidence Statement:** Weight loss produced by lifestyle modifications reduces blood pressure in overweight hypertensive patients. Evidence Category A.

**Rationale:** A 1987 meta-analysis covering five of the acceptable studies in hypertensive patients concluded that weight loss accomplished by dietary interventions significantly lowered blood pressure. In hypertensive patients, 10 kg (22 lb) of weight loss was associated with an average reduction of 7 mm Hg systolic and 3 mm Hg diastolic blood pressure compared with controls.

Since publication of this meta-analysis in 1987, almost all relevant studies have reported that weight loss reduces blood pressure or the need for medication in hypertensive patients.

- The Trial of Antihypertensive Interventions and Management (TAIM), conducted in hypertensive individuals not taking medication for 6 months, reported that, compared with controls, a mean net weight reduction of 4.7 kg (10.4 lb) reduced systolic and diastolic blood pressure by 2.8 mm Hg and 2.5 mm Hg, respectively; the effects on blood pressure were equivalent to drug therapy among those participants who lost 4.5 kg (9.9 lb) or more.

- One study in older (age 60 to 80 years) hypertensive adults whose blood pressure medication was withdrawn (Trial of Nonpharmacologic Interventions in the Elderly, TONE) showed that after 2 years, mean net weight loss of nearly 4 kg (9 lb) resulted in more participants free of trial endpoints (occurrence of high blood pressure, resumption of blood pressure medication, or occurrence of a cardiovascular-clinical complication [39.2 percent versus 26.2 percent]). Furthermore, blood pressure control was similar for men and women and for African-Americans and whites.

- In other studies of primarily middle-aged hypertensive adults, compared with controls, weight loss significantly reduced a return to hypertension medication at 1 year and at 4 to 5 years.

- The Multiple Risk Factor Intervention Trial, which recruited 12,866 high-risk men, 30 percent of whom had hypertension, delivered an integrated intervention addressing several lifestyle behaviors and included weight loss as an important component. Significant reductions in systolic and diastolic blood pressure were found over 6 years compared with the usual care group and were directly related to weight loss: 1 kg (2.2 lb) of weight loss was associated with a reduction of 0.4 mm Hg systolic and 0.3 mm Hg diastolic blood pressure in men not taking antihypertensive medications. The effect was slightly lower for men taking antihypertensive medications.

- Only one RCT conducted in hypertensive patients reported no significant change in blood pressure despite weight loss of 3.3 kg (7.3 lb).

- Another study conducted in hypertensive individuals suggested that weight loss reduced blood pressure only when sodium intake was also reduced. This finding was not consistent with a prior study of hypertensive patients and has not been corroborated in subsequent larger trials conducted in nonhypertensive individuals.
1.a.(2). Lifestyle Trials in Nonhypertensive Individuals

Evidence Statement: Weight loss produced by lifestyle modifications reduces blood pressure in overweight nonhypertensive individuals. Evidence Category A.

Rationale: A semiquantitative review covering four of the acceptable studies in nonhypertensive individuals concluded that weight loss through dietary interventions significantly lowered blood pressure. In nonhypertensives, excluding one outlier trial that showed very large reductions in blood pressure, 1 kg (2.2 lb) of weight loss was associated with a reduction of 0.45 mm Hg in both systolic and diastolic blood pressure. Since this review, published in 1991, almost all relevant studies have reported that weight loss reduces blood pressure in nonhypertensive individuals. The Trials of Hypertension Prevention Phase 1 (TOHP I) and Phase 2 (TOHP II) are among the larger, well-designed randomized trials, having follow-up rates exceeding 90 percent. They followed the participants for 18 months and 3 to 4 years. The sample size of the weight loss intervention arms ranged from approximately 300 (TOHP I) to 600 (TOHP II). The populations were diverse, consisting of 30 to 35 percent women and 15 to 18 percent African-Americans, and were recruited from 10 centers in TOHP I and 9 centers in TOHP II. Results from both TOHP I and TOHP II demonstrated that weight loss reduced blood pressure and the incidence of hypertension. Compared with controls, in both trials 10 kg (22 lb) of weight loss was associated with a reduction of 7 mm Hg systolic and 5 to 6 mm Hg diastolic blood pressure at 18 months. At 36 months, systolic and diastolic blood pressure was reduced by 6 and 4 mm Hg, respectively, for every 10 kg of weight loss. In addition, weight loss reduced the incidence of hypertension at 18 months by 20 to 50 percent and at 3 years by 19 percent. Secondary analyses from TOHP I and analyses under way from TOHP II demonstrated that the greater the weight loss the greater the blood pressure reduction, and as long as weight loss was maintained, blood pressure remained reduced. One study that focused on older African-American diabetics showed that weight loss of 2.4 kg (5.3 lb) at 6 months resulted in a reduction of 3.9 and 4.0 mm Hg systolic and diastolic blood pressure. Only one study in nonhypertensive individuals showed inconsistent results, where weight reduction decreased systolic (significant) and diastolic (nonsignificant) blood pressure at 12 months in women but not in men. Another study showed short-term (3 months) blood pressure reduction but no longer-term (9 months) blood pressure reduction despite maintenance of weight loss of 9 kg (19.8 lb).

1.b. Pharmacotherapy Trials

Evidence Statement: Weight loss produced by most weight loss medications (except for sibutramine) and adjuvant lifestyle modifications is accompanied by reductions in blood pressure. Evidence Category B.

To determine the effects of pharmacological therapy on weight loss and subsequent changes in blood pressure levels, 10 RCT articles were examined. Weight loss studies using pharmacotherapy were conducted predominantly in white women and assumed that dietary changes were uniform in the active drug and placebo groups. All of these studies had a placebo-control group for which dietary recommendations for weight loss were provided; weight loss also occurred in the placebo group. No studies exam-
ined whether weight loss using pharmacotherapy results in blood pressure reductions similar to weight loss produced by diet therapy, nor were the results compared with a pure control group with no weight loss. In addition, none of the studies that examined the effect of pharmacotherapy on blood pressure controlled for weight loss. In general, the use of phentermine, fenfluramine, and dexfenfluramine resulted in similar or better weight loss than that seen in the control or placebo group, and reductions in systolic and diastolic blood pressure were concomitantly similar to or better than those observed in the diet plus placebo group. 386, 390-393, 395 However, one study on dexfenfluramine 394 showed increased blood pressure compared to controls, even though weight loss was greater with dexfenfluramine than with placebo. Another study showed blood pressure lowering consistent with weight reduction produced by dexfenfluramine in women with upper-body obesity, but not in women with lower-body obesity. 387 In a combined summary of data on orlistat presented at the FDA Endocrinologic and Metabolic Drugs Advisory Committee Meeting (held in Bethesda, Maryland, in May 1997), only a small decrease in systolic (approximately 2 mm Hg) and diastolic (approximately 1 mm Hg) blood pressure was observed compared to the placebo. 388 In a study of sibutramine, a net weight loss at 3 months of approximately 2 kg (4.4 lb) did not result in lower blood pressure compared with placebo controls. 389 Eleven double-blind placebo-controlled trials lasting from 12 to 52 weeks showed that sibutramine is associated with mean increases in systolic blood pressure of 1 to 3 mm Hg, in diastolic pressure of 1 to 2 mm Hg, and mean increases in pulse rate of 3 to 5 beats per minute relative to placebo. In hypertensive obese patients, the mean change in blood pressure was the same in the sibutramine group and the placebo group; both dropped. Systolic pressure decreased 5.4 mm Hg in the sibutramine group and 5.8 mm Hg in the placebo group, while the diastolic drop was 5.9 mm Hg and 3.7 mm Hg, respectively. At the FDA recommended doses, 45 percent of patients had an increase, 35 percent had a decrease, and 20 percent had no change in blood pressure. 389

1.c. Abdominal Fat

**Evidence Statement:** Limited evidence suggests that decreases in abdominal fat reduce blood pressure in overweight nonhypertensive individuals, although this has not been shown to be independent of weight loss. Evidence Category C.

**Rationale:** Five RCTs 365,369,373, 375,377 testing the effects of weight loss on blood pressure also measured abdominal fat by waist circumference or by dual-energy X-ray absorptiometry. In all five studies, waist circumference was reduced along with weight, and blood pressure was decreased. These studies were not designed to test whether reduction in abdominal fat reduces blood pressure independent of weight loss.

1.d. Fitness

**Evidence Statement:** Increased aerobic activity to increase cardiorespiratory fitness reduces blood pressure independent of weight loss. Evidence Category A.

**Rationale:** Seven RCTs testing the effects of weight loss on blood pressure in overweight and obese individuals also had measures of cardiorespiratory fitness, as measured by maximal oxygen uptake 346, 363, 369, 375, 377, 380, or submaximal heart rate tests. 365 Weight loss was accompanied by increased fitness, primarily if the intervention included increased physical activity or physical activity combined with diet. 346, 363, 375, 377, 380 These
studies were not designed to test whether increased cardiorespiratory fitness reduces blood pressure independent of weight loss in overweight and obese adults. By contrast, in 3 meta-analyses of 68 controlled studies of physical activity conducted in normotensive and hypertensive individuals, obesity was not an outcome measure nor was it included in the eligibility criteria. These meta-analyses showed that aerobic exercise to increase cardiorespiratory fitness significantly reduces blood pressure independent of or in the absence of weight loss.

Rationale: Fourteen RCT articles that studied the effects of diet and/or physical activity on lipids were reviewed.

Table III-1 summarizes RCTs in which diet alone was used to produce weight loss. Entries under percentage change were calculated as follows: the percentage change (value at the end of study minus the value at baseline, divided by the value at baseline) was determined for the intervention group and the control group; the percentage change for the control group was then subtracted from the percentage change for the intervention group, giving the numerical value presented. When a run-in period was used, the “baseline” subtracted was the value at the end of the run-in, which was when the intervention began.

Reductions in body weight varied from 5 to 13 percent compared to the control group. The following changes in plasma lipids and lipoproteins were observed: total cholesterol, 0 to -18 percent; triglycerides, -2 to -44 percent; LDL-cholesterol, -3 to -22 percent; and HDL-cholesterol, -7 to +27 percent. Most of the trials were of sufficient duration to ensure that these changes were not the result of acute caloric deficit.

Table III-2 summarizes RCTs in which diet plus physical activity or physical activity alone was used to produce weight loss. Entries under percentage change were calculated as for Table III-1. Similar changes were observed as for diet alone, although there was perhaps a more consistent trend for all the lipid parameters with the combination of diet and physical activity and with physical activity alone.

RECOMMENDATION: Weight loss is recommended to lower elevated blood pressure in overweight and obese persons with high blood pressure. Evidence Category A.

2. Serum/Plasma Lipids and Lipoproteins
Sixty-five RCT articles were evaluated for the effect of weight loss on serum/plasma concentrations of total cholesterol, low-density lipoprotein (LDL)-cholesterol, very low-density lipoprotein cholesterol, triglycerides, and high-density lipoprotein (HDL)-cholesterol. Studies were conducted on individuals over a range of overweight and lipid levels. Weight loss in 52 of these trials was induced by various lifestyle modifications, including diet modification (reducing calories, or saturated fat and cholesterol, or both) and increased physical activity.

2.a. Lifestyle Trials

Evidence Statement: Weight loss produced by lifestyle modifications reduces serum triglycerides and increases HDL-cholesterol, and generally produces some reductions in serum total cholesterol, and LDL-cholesterol. Evidence Category A.
### TABLE III-1: **Weight Reduction by Diet Alone**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study</th>
<th>N, Sex, and Duration</th>
<th>Weight Loss</th>
<th>Percentage Change</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dengel¹⁹⁵</td>
<td>28M experimental 14M control 9 months</td>
<td>-12</td>
<td>-9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hellenius³⁵³</td>
<td>40M experimental 39M control 6 months</td>
<td>BMI</td>
<td>-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jalkanen³⁵⁰</td>
<td>24 experimental (wt) 22 experimental (lipid) 25 control (wt) 22 control (lipid) 12 months</td>
<td>-5</td>
<td>-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Karvetti³⁶⁴</td>
<td>71F experimental 76F control 12 months</td>
<td>-6</td>
<td>-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marniemi³⁶²</td>
<td>37 (27F/10M) mixed diet 42 (32F/10M) control 12 months 31 (23F/8M) lactovegetarian 42 (32F/10M) control 12 months</td>
<td>-13</td>
<td>-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Puddey³⁷⁰</td>
<td>22M experimental 20M control 18 weeks</td>
<td>-8</td>
<td>-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simkin-Silverman³⁷³</td>
<td>253F experimental 267F control 6 months</td>
<td>-7</td>
<td>-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Svendsen³⁸⁴</td>
<td>50F experimental 20F control 12 weeks</td>
<td>-13</td>
<td>-18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wood³⁸⁰</td>
<td>40M experimental 40M control 12 months 31F experimental 39F control 12 months</td>
<td>-7</td>
<td>-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wood³⁷⁰</td>
<td>42M experimental 42M control 12 months</td>
<td>-7</td>
<td>-5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TC= Total Cholesterol  
TG= Triglycerides  
BMI= Body Mass Index
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study</th>
<th>N, Sex, and Duration</th>
<th>Weight Loss</th>
<th>Percentage Change</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>BMI</td>
<td>TC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hellenius&lt;sup&gt;385&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Diet+physical activity 39M experimental 39M control 6 month</td>
<td>-4</td>
<td>-5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Physical activity only 39M experimental 39M control 6 months</td>
<td>-2</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>King&lt;sup&gt;401&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Physical activity only 40M high intensity group 41M control 12 months</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Physical activity only 42M high intensity home 41M control 12 months</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Physical activity only 45M low intensity 41M control 12 months</td>
<td>-4</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Physical activity only 34F high intensity group 34F control 12 months</td>
<td>+2</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Physical activity only 35F high intensity home 34F control 12 months</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Physical activity only 29F low intensity 34F control 12 months</td>
<td>-2</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TC= Total Cholesterol  
TG= Triglycerides  
LDL-C= Low-Density Lipoprotein Cholesterol  
HDL-C= High-Density Lipoprotein Cholesterol  
BMI= Body Mass Index
## Weight Reduction by Diet Plus Physical Activity or Physical Activity Alone (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study</th>
<th>N, Sex, and Duration</th>
<th>Weight Loss</th>
<th>Percentage Change</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nilsson403</td>
<td>Diet+physical activity 30 (24M/6F) experimental 29 (22M/7F) control 12 months</td>
<td>BMI -2</td>
<td>TC -3 TG -4 LDL-C -3 HDL-C -1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ronnemaa404</td>
<td>Physical activity only 13 (8M/5F) experimental 12 (7M/5F) control 4 months</td>
<td>-3</td>
<td>-6 -3 -5 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schuler405</td>
<td>Diet+physical activity 56M experimental 57M control 12 months</td>
<td>-5</td>
<td>-10 -7 -10 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Svendsen384</td>
<td>Diet+physical activity 48F experimental 20F control 12 weeks</td>
<td>-14</td>
<td>-17 -35 -26 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wood380</td>
<td>Diet+physical activity 39M experimental 40M control 12 months</td>
<td>-11</td>
<td>-4 -46 -2 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Diet+physical activity 42F experimental 39F control 12 months</td>
<td>-9</td>
<td>-5 -18 -8 5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TC= Total Cholesterol  
TG= Triglycerides  
BMI= Body Mass Index  
LDL-C= Low-Density Lipoprotein Cholesterol  
HDL-C= High-Density Lipoprotein Cholesterol
2.b. Pharmacotherapy Trials

Evidence Statement: Weight loss produced by weight loss medications and adjuvant lifestyle modifications produces no consistent change in blood lipids. Evidence Category B.

Rationale: The effects of pharmacological therapy on weight loss and subsequent changes in total serum cholesterol levels were evaluated by examining eight RCTs (Table III-3). The four trials of dexfenfluramine showed no consistent effects on total cholesterol; three trials showed decreases in triglycerides ranging from 14 to 40 percent and two trials showed increases in HDL-cholesterol of 8 percent in women to 27 percent in men. One trial of phentermine plus fenfluramine showed a 24 percent decrease in triglycerides and a slight change in HDL-cholesterol. The trial of orlistat showed a decrease in total cholesterol and an increase in triglycerides, while the trial of fluoxetine showed the opposite. Other RCTs using orlistat have shown a modest improvement in lipids with weight loss.

In a combined summary of data presented at the FDA Endocrinologic and Metabolic Drugs Advisory Committee Meeting (held in Bethesda, Maryland, in September 1996), use of sibutramine, which resulted in a greater net weight loss of 2.4 kg (5.3 lb) at 4 months, also resulted in modestly lower levels of total cholesterol, LDL-cholesterol, and triglycerides, along with slightly higher HDL-cholesterol levels, compared to placebos.

2.c. Abdominal Fat

Evidence Statement: Limited evidence suggests that decreases in abdominal fat correlate with improvements in the lipid profile of overweight individuals, although these improvements have not been shown to be independent of weight loss. Evidence Category C.

Rationale: Four RCTs testing the effects of weight loss on blood lipids also included measures of abdominal fat, as measured by waist circumference. In each study, waist circumference was reduced along with weight, and blood lipids were improved. These studies were not designed to test whether reductions in abdominal fat reduce blood lipids independent of weight loss. However, evidence exists from epidemiologic observational studies that abdominal fat is related to an adverse lipid profile, including higher levels of total cholesterol, LDL-cholesterol, and triglycerides, and lower levels of HDL-cholesterol.

2.d. Fitness

Evidence Statement: Increased aerobic activity to increase cardiorespiratory fitness favorably affects blood lipids, particularly if accompanied by weight loss. Evidence Category A.

Rationale: Nine RCTs testing the effects of weight loss on lipoproteins measured cardiorespiratory fitness, as measured by maximal oxygen uptake. Weight loss was accompanied by increased fitness if the intervention included increased physical activity or physical activity combined with diet. These studies were not designed to test whether increased cardiorespiratory fitness reduces blood lipids independent of weight loss in overweight and obese adults. However, considerable evidence exists that aerobic exercise decreases triglycerides and total cholesterol and may increase HDL-cholesterol in men and women, particularly if accompanied by weight loss.
## TABLE III-3:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study</th>
<th>N, Sex, and Duration</th>
<th>Weight Loss</th>
<th>Percentage Change</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>TC</td>
<td>TG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bremer&quot;386&quot;</td>
<td>Dexamfluramine</td>
<td>-6</td>
<td>-14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12 (8M/4F) experimental</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14 (8M/6F) control</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12 weeks</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mathus-Vliegen&quot;391&quot;</td>
<td>Dexamfluramine</td>
<td>-4</td>
<td>+7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>17 experimental</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>18 control</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12 months</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O'Connor&quot;392&quot;</td>
<td>Dexamfluramine</td>
<td>-6</td>
<td>+5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>27 (6M/21F) experimental</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>24 (14M/10F) control</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6 months</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pfohl&quot;393&quot;</td>
<td>Dexamfluramine</td>
<td>-2</td>
<td>-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19 experimental</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15 control</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12 months</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weintraub&quot;395&quot;</td>
<td>Fen/Phen</td>
<td>-13</td>
<td>-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>53 Fen/Phen</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>51 placebo</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>34 weeks</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drent&quot;407&quot;</td>
<td>Orlistat</td>
<td>-2</td>
<td>-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>20 (3M/17F) Orlistat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19 (3M/16F) placebo</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12 weeks</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O’Kane&quot;408&quot;</td>
<td>Fluoxetine</td>
<td>-6</td>
<td>+9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7 Fluoxetine</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9 placebo</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TC= Total Cholesterol  
TG= Triglycerides  
LDL-C= Low-Density Lipoprotein Cholesterol  
HDL-C= High-Density Lipoprotein Cholesterol  
BMI= Body Mass Index
RECOMMENDATION: Weight loss is recommended to lower elevated levels of total cholesterol, LDL-cholesterol and triglycerides and to raise low levels of HDL-cholesterol in overweight and obese persons with dyslipidemia. Evidence Category A.

3. Impaired Glucose Tolerance and Diabetes

Forty-nine articles of RCTs were reviewed to evaluate the effect of weight loss on fasting blood glucose and fasting insulin. Studies were conducted in individuals with normal blood glucose levels (fasting plasma glucose < 115 mg/dL [< 6.4 mmol/L]), in individuals with impaired glucose tolerance (fasting plasma glucose of < 140 mg/dL [7.8 mmol/L]) or 2 hours postprandial plasma glucose of ≥ 140 to < 200 mg/dL [7.8-11.1 mmol/L]), or in individuals with diabetes (fasting plasma glucose of > 140 mg/dL or 2 hours postprandial plasma blood glucose ≥ 200 mg/dL).*

The methods of weight loss included diet, physical activity, or both; behavior therapy; and pharmacotherapy. The dietary interventions included low calorie and very low calorie, and those that promoted changes in diet composition, such as amount and type of dietary fat. Physical activity varied from controlled individualized exercise programs to informal group sessions coupled with behavior therapy and dietary changes. The degree of blinding of outcome measures was not always well described, nor was there a systematic consideration of concurrent effects of changes in medication or adherence to medication among diabetic patients enrolled in these weight reduction studies.

Of the 17 RCT articles considered acceptable, 10 included normoglycemic individuals, 367, 373, 386, 387, 390-393, 403, 412 2 included patients with impaired glucose tolerance, 70, 369 and 5 included patients with type 2 diabetes. 362, 404, 408, 413, 414

3.a. Lifestyle Trials

Evidence Statement: Weight loss produced by lifestyle modifications, reduces blood glucose levels in overweight and obese persons without type 2 diabetes, and reduces blood glucose levels and HbA1c in some patients with type 2 diabetes. Evidence Category A.

Rationale: Nine RCTs examined lifestyle therapy. 70, 362, 367, 369, 373, 403, 404, 412, 413 Five RCTs among normoglycemic overweight individuals examined the effects of behavior therapy or lifestyle change on weight loss. Changes in fasting glucose or fasting insulin were used as secondary outcome measures. Improvements in the levels of fasting insulin with weight loss ranged from 18 to 30 percent. While weight loss was maintained, improvements were observed for fasting glucose, fasting insulin, and glucose and insulin levels during oral glucose tolerance testing compared to controls. 367, 373, 403, 412

Three RCTs of lifestyle modifications were conducted among overweight diabetic patients. 362, 404, 413 One RCT of diet and physical activity in African-Americans aged 55 to 79 years with type 2 diabetes showed a 2.4 kg (5.3 lb) weight loss at 6 months compared to the usual-care control group. The intervention group also decreased HbA1c by 2.4 percentage units at 6 months. 362 in another study, weight loss of 5 kg (11 lb) through diet resulted in a reduction of HbA1c by 2 percentage units at 6 months compared with the controls. 413 At 1 year, the difference in weight loss between the two groups was reduced, and diabetic control was similar in each group. In the third study, weight loss, through physical activity in 25 type 2 diabetes patients randomly

* The reviewed articles used the “old” definitions of the American Diabetes Association (ADA) for impaired glucose tolerance and diabetes. As of November 1997, the new ADA definitions define “impaired fasting glucose” as those individuals having a fasting plasma glucose of 110 to 125 mg/dL, and “diabetes” as those individuals having a fasting plasma glucose of ≥ 126 mg/dL or 2 hours postprandial plasma glucose of ≥ 200 mg/dL.
assigned to physical activity (13 patients) or control (12 patients) groups, was associated with improved HbA1c. 404

One RCT of 530 individuals in China with impaired glucose tolerance compared the effects of diet, physical activity, and diet plus physical activity on the incidence of diabetes. The data were analyzed for the group as a whole and for the lean and overweight groups separately. The overweight individuals in the diet and diet plus physical activity groups lowered their BMIs, while the lean individuals did not. After 6 years, the cumulative incidence rates of diabetes were significantly lower in all three intervention groups than they were in the controls (43.8 percent in the diet group, 41.1 percent in the physical activity group, 46 percent in the diet plus physical activity group, and 67.7 percent in the controls). This was true also if only the overweight persons were included in the analysis. 70

3.b. Pharmacotherapy Trials

**Evidence Statement:** Weight loss produced by weight loss medications has not been shown to be any better than weight loss through lifestyle modification for improving blood glucose levels in overweight or obese persons both with and without type 2 diabetes. Evidence Category B.

**Rationale:** Eight RCT articles considered the effects of pharmacotherapy on weight loss and subsequent changes in blood glucose. 386, 387, 390-395 408, 414

Six trials in nondiabetic individuals reported weight loss with anorexiant drugs. 386, 387, 390-395

One study of 75 subjects with refractory obesity showed that those taking dexfenfluramine had a significantly better improvement in their blood glucose levels as compared to placebo controls. 390

Another trial showed that after 6 months on dexfenfluramine, fasting serum insulin levels fell from 105 at baseline to 89 at 6 months, but glucose levels did not decrease. 392 This study was difficult to interpret. Four other RCTs of dexfenfluramine failed to show any significant differences between the active drug and placebo groups for glucose or insulin, despite significant differences in weight reduction. 386, 387, 391, 393

Among diabetic patients, there were two trials of anorexiant drugs. One trial of dexfenfluramine compared with standard clinic practice showed significantly greater weight loss at 3 months but not at 6 or 12 months. 414 Weight loss at 3 months was 3.4 kg (7.5 lb) in the dexfenfluramine group and 1.59 kg (3.5 lb) in the clinic group. At 6 months, the weight loss was 3.13 kg (6.9 lb) in the dexfenfluramine group and 1.70 kg (3.7 lb) in the clinic group. By 1 year, both groups had regained some weight. Despite more than a 1 kg (2.2 lb) difference of weight between the dexfenfluramine group and the control group, there were no significant differences between groups in changes from baseline for HbA1c at any of the follow-up times (3, 6, or 12 months). In the trial of fluoxetine, those patients on 60 mg of fluoxetine daily compared with the placebo group had significant weight loss at 6 months, a finding that was associated with improvements in glucose and HbA1c. At 12 months, these differences were no longer significant. 408 The RCTs of orlistat showed a drop in both fasting glucose and HbA1c in diabetic patients on a combination therapy of lifestyle change and orlistat for weight loss. 388

3.c. Abdominal Fat

**Evidence Statement:** Decreases in abdominal fat improve glucose tolerance in overweight individuals with impaired glucose tolerance, although this has not been shown to be independent of weight loss. Evidence Category C.
Rationale: Two RCTs testing the effects of weight loss on changes in glucose tolerance and insulin also had measures of abdominal fat, as measured by waist circumference. In each study, waist circumference was reduced along with weight loss and glucose tolerance improved. Neither study was designed to test whether reductions in waist circumference improved glucose tolerance or diabetic control independent of weight loss.

Evidence exists from observational studies that abdominal fat is related to impaired glucose tolerance or type 2 diabetes independent of BMI. For instance, a few studies have found a significant relationship between abdominal fat loss and improvement in glucose tolerance and insulin action.

3.d. Fitness

Evidence Statement: Increased cardiorespiratory fitness improves glucose tolerance in overweight individuals, but no evidence shows this relationship to be independent of weight loss. Evidence Category C.

Rationale: Two RCTs that examined the effects of weight loss on glucose tolerance in older men and in persons with diabetes also had measures of VO₂ max (oxygen consumption) as a measure of fitness. In both studies, physical activity resulted in a net weight loss of approximately 2.3 to 2.5 kg (2 to 3 percent) and increased VO₂ max by 9 to 18 percent. In one study most measures of glucose tolerance improved, whereas in the other study only 2-hour insulin improved. Neither study was designed to test whether increased fitness improves glucose tolerance independent of weight loss.

RECOMMENDATION: Weight loss is recommended to lower elevated blood glucose levels in overweight and obese persons with type 2 diabetes. Evidence Category A.

4. Decreases in Abdominal Fat With Weight Loss

Evidence Statement: Weight loss is associated with decreases in abdominal fat, as measured by waist circumference. Evidence Category A.

Rationale: Six acceptable RCTs on weight loss that measured waist circumferences all show that weight loss is associated with reductions in waist circumference. Waist circumference is commonly used as a surrogate measure for abdominal visceral fat. Although no RCTs examined changes in visceral fat per se, one observational study showed significant decreases in visceral fat with a mean weight loss of 12.9 kg (28.4 lb).

In addition, many observational and non-RCT interventional studies have reported that weight loss caused by a variety of treatments reduces abdominal visceral fat levels. Fat located in the abdominal region is associated with greater health risks than that in peripheral regions, e.g., the gluteal-femoral area. Many studies used the waist-to-hip ratio as the measure of abdominal fat; however, the panel considered waist circumference to be a better marker of abdominal fat content than the waist-to-hip ratio. For more information on abdominal fat, see Section 4.B.
WHAT TREATMENTS ARE EFFECTIVE?

A variety of modalities may be used to treat overweight and obesity. To assess their effectiveness on weight loss, loss of abdominal fat, and cardiorespiratory fitness, evidence from RCTs was examined. These trials considered dietary therapy, physical activity, combined therapy, behavior therapy, pharmacotherapy, and surgery. The details of the studies reviewed and subsequently not included are provided in Appendix II.

1. Dietary Therapy

Eighty-six RCT articles evaluated the effectiveness of many different diets on weight loss: low-calorie diets (LCDs), very low-calorie diets (VLCDs), vegetarian, American Heart Association guidelines and the National Cholesterol Education Program’s Step I diet with caloric restriction, and other low-fat regimens with varying combinations of macronutrients. The trials that included participants who were not overweight were rejected. Some trials were done in patient populations with diabetes, hypertension, or hyperlipidemia. Many of the trials do not mention whether concomitant physical activity programs were promoted, and many do not give information about the behavioral approaches that were used to deliver the diet or physical activity intervention.

Approximately 60 percent of the trials are equal to or greater than 6 months in duration.

1.a Low-Calorie Diets

Evidence Statement: LCDs can reduce total body weight by an average of 8 percent over 3 to 12 months. Evidence Category A.

Rationale: Thirty-four RCT articles examined the impact on weight loss of an LCD consisting of approximately 1,000 to 1,200 kilocalories/day. Many of these LCDs also promoted low fat intake as a practical way to reduce calories. Twenty-five RCT articles covered interventions lasting 6 or more months. Another nine RCTs lasted 12 to 21 weeks.

Evidence Statement: LCDs resulting in weight loss effect a decrease in abdominal fat. Evidence Category A.

Four RCTs testing the effects of LCDs alone on weight loss also had measures of abdominal fat, as measured by waist circumference. The studies showed consistently that waist circumference decreases along with weight loss produced by LCDs. After 6 to 12 months, LCDs resulted in a mean weight loss of as little as 0.3 BMI unit to as much as 11 kg (24.3 lb) body weight, and a concomitant reduction in waist circumference of 1.5 to 9.5 cm compared to controls.
Evidence Statement: No improvement in cardiorespiratory fitness as measured by VO2 max appears to occur in overweight or obese adults who lose weight on LCDs without increasing physical activity. Evidence Category B.

Rationale: Ten RCTs examined whether weight loss through diet alone without increased physical activity had an effect on cardiorespiratory fitness as measured by VO2 max when compared to controls with no weight loss. Four RCTs reported no improvement in VO2 max, while six RCTs reported an improvement. In three of the six studies, improvement in those on the LCD was shown because the control group had a large decrease in VO2 max. In all six studies that showed improvement, VO2 max was expressed as ml/kg/min rather than liters/min. Because the ratio of ml O2/kg/min increases with weight loss alone and not necessarily from an improvement in oxygen uptake, results from studies reporting VO2 max in terms of ml O2/kg/min are equivocal. The three studies that reported VO2 max as liters/min consistently showed no improvement from diet alone.

1.b. Very Low-Calorie Diets

Evidence Statement: VLCDs produce greater initial weight loss than LCDs. However, the long-term (> 1 year) weight loss is not different from that of the LCD. Evidence Category A.

Four RCTs compared VLCDs to LCDs. The VLCDs provided about 400 to 500 kcal/day, whereas the LCDs provided approximately 1,000 to 1,500 kcal/day. During the active phase, VLCDs were given exclusively for 12 to 16 weeks and then were followed by LCDs for a total duration ranging from 24 weeks to 5 years. The participants in these trials were primarily women who were extremely obese.

VLCDs either alone or, usually, combined with behavioral therapy, promoted weight loss of approximately 13 to 23 kg (28.7 to 50.7 lb) during the active phase of the VLCD intervention, compared to 9 to 13 kg (19.8 to 28.7 lb) with LCDs. In three of the four studies, VLCDs resulted in 4 to 12 kg (8.8 to 26.5 lb) greater weight loss than the LCDs at the end of the active phase. Over the medium term of 6 to 12 months, weight loss on the VLCDs ranged from 1.1 kg (2.4 lb) to as much as 10.4 kg (22.9 lb) greater than weight loss on LCDs. One study did not show a particular advantage of VLCD over LCD either during the active phase or at 24 weeks. After 1 year, there was no long-term advantage of VLCDs over LCDs.

1.c. Lower-Fat Diets

Evidence Statement: Although lower-fat diets without targeted caloric reduction help promote weight loss by producing a reduced caloric intake, lower-fat diets coupled with total caloric reduction produce greater weight loss than lower-fat diets alone. Evidence Category A. Lower-fat diets produce weight loss primarily by decreasing caloric intake. Evidence Category B.

Rationale: Nine RCTs testing the effects of diet on weight loss promoted diets that varied in fat and caloric content. Lower-fat diets varied from 20 to 30 percent of calories from fat, and calories ranged from 1,200 to 2,300 calories.
Three RCTs, all 6 months or greater in duration, promoted lower-fat diets with ad libitum caloric intake. Two of the three RCTs reported that lower-fat diets with ad libitum energy intake resulted in a reduction in caloric intake of 85 kcal and 300 kcal, and all three RCTs produced greater weight loss by 1 to 3.9 kg (2.2 to 8.6 lb), compared to a higher-fat diet. The third RCT had a large disparity in baseline caloric intake between the two diet groups, making the reported caloric intakes at the end of the study difficult to compare.

Three RCTs compared lower-fat diets with targeted caloric reduction to lower-fat diets alone, and all three found that weight loss is greater in the lower-fat diet with caloric reduction than with the lower-fat diet alone.

When similar caloric levels occur between lower-fat and higher-fat diets, similar amounts of weight loss were reported in two studies, whereas one study showed 1.8 kg (4 lb) greater weight loss on the lower-fat compared with the higher-fat diet, despite similar reported caloric levels.

Taken together, these studies show that lower-fat diets ranging from 20 to 30 percent of calories can contribute to lower caloric intake even when caloric reduction is not the focus of the intervention, but when LCDs are targeted with lower-fat diets, better weight loss is achieved. However, there is little evidence that lower-fat diets (per se) cause weight loss independent of caloric reduction.

**RECOMMENDATION:** LCDs are recommended for weight loss in overweight and obese persons. Evidence Category A. Reducing fat as part of an LCD is a practical way to reduce calories. Evidence Category A.
Evidence Statement: Physical activity, i.e., aerobic exercise, in overweight and obese adults results in modest weight loss independent of the effect of caloric reduction through diet. Evidence Category A.

Rationale: Twelve RCT articles examined the effects of physical activity, consisting primarily of aerobic exercise, on weight loss compared to controls. \(^{346, 363, 365, 369, 401, 406, 432}\) Ten of the 12 RCT articles reported a mean weight loss of 2.4 kg (5.3 lb) or 2.4 percent of weight \(^{363, 369, 375, 406, 432}\) or a mean reduction in BMI of 0.7 kg/m\(^2\) (2.7 percent reduction) \(^{346, 365, 401}\) in the exercise group compared to the control group. In three of these ten studies, the weight loss was < 2 percent of body weight (< 2 kg) (4.4 lb) \(^{369, 434}\). In contrast, two RCTs showed no benefit on weight from exercise, reporting weight gain in the exercise group compared to the control group. \(^{445, 446}\) In one of these studies, the control group received only diet advice but nevertheless lost 9 kg (19.8 lb), whereas the exercise group lost only 7 kg (15.4 lb). \(^{445}\) In the second study, there was a total of only 10 participants, all having noninsulin-dependent diabetes mellitus, and the control group lost 3 kg (6.6 lb) whereas the exercise group lost only 2 kg (4.4 lb). \(^{446}\) A meta-analysis of 28 publications of the effect on weight loss of exercise compared to diet or control groups showed that aerobic exercise alone produces a modest weight loss of 3 kg (6.6 lb) in men and 1.4 kg (3.1 lb) in women compared to controls. \(^{449}\)

Ten articles reported on RCTs that had a diet-only group in addition to an exercise-only group. \(^{346, 363, 365, 369, 406, 432}\) In every case except one, \(^{365}\) the exercise-only group did not experience as much weight loss as the diet-only group. The diet-only group produced approximately 3 percent, or 3 kg (6.6 lb), greater weight loss than the exercise-only group.

No single study examined the length of the intervention in relation to the weight loss outcome. Only one study compared the effect on maximum oxygen uptake of different intensities and formats of physical activity over a 1-year follow-up \(^{401}\) and 2-year follow-up period. \(^{447}\) Better adherence over 1 year was found if the exercise was performed at home rather than in a group setting, regardless of the intensity level. Subsequently, the different exercise groups were compared with each other over the longer term (2 years), and better long-term adherence was found in the higher intensity home-based exercise group compared to the lower intensity home-based or higher intensity group-based exercise groups. \(^{447}\)

The question of whether physical activity enhances long-term maintenance of weight loss has not been formally examined in RCTs. Examination of long-term weight loss maintenance produced by physical activity interventions compared with diet-only interventions cannot easily be compared between RCTs because of numerous differences between studies with respect to design, sample size, intervention content and delivery, and characteristics of the study population samples. However, a number of analyses of observational and post hoc analyses of intervention studies have examined whether physical activity has a beneficial effect on weight. Cross-sectional studies have generally shown that physical activity is inversely related to body weight \(^{450-454}\) and rate of weight gain with age. \(^{455}\) Longitudinal studies with 2 to 10 years of follow-up results have observed that physical activity is related to less weight gain over time \(^{456-459}\), less weight gain after smoking cessation in women, \(^{460}\) and weight loss over 2 years. \(^{461}\)
addition, post hoc analyses of several weight loss intervention studies reported that physical activity was a predictor of successful weight loss. 454, 462, 463

The results of these RCTs showed that physical activity produces only modest weight loss and observational analyses from other studies suggest that physical activity may play a role in long-term weight control and/or maintenance of weight loss.

**Evidence Statement:** Physical activity in overweight and obese adults modestly reduces abdominal fat. Evidence Category B.

**Rationale:** Only three RCTs testing the effect of physical activity on weight loss also had measures of abdominal fat as assessed by waist circumference. 365, 369, 375 One study demonstrated that physical activity reduced waist circumference compared with the control group, 365 and another study showed a small effect on waist circumference (0.9 cm) in men but not women. 375 One study in men showed a small increase in waist circumference. 369 Weight loss was modest in all of these studies. These studies were not designed to test the effects of physical activity on abdominal fat independent of weight loss.

However, several large studies in Europe, 464 Canada, 453 and the United States 465-468 reported that physical activity has a favorable effect on body fat distribution. These studies showed an inverse association between energy expenditure through physical activity and several indicators of abdominal obesity, such as waist circumference and waist-to-hip and waist-to-thigh circumference ratios.

**Evidence Statement:** Physical activity in overweight and obese adults increases cardiorespiratory fitness independent of weight loss. Evidence Category A.

**Rationale:** Eleven RCT articles testing the effect of physical activity alone on weight loss in men and women also included measures of cardiorespiratory fitness, as measured by maximal oxygen uptake (VO2 max). 346, 363, 369, 375, 401, 404, 406, 432, 434, 445, 446 All 11 showed that physical activity increased maximum oxygen uptake in men and women in the exercise groups by an average of 14 percent (ml/kg body weight) to 18 percent (L/min). Even in studies with modest weight loss (< 2 percent), physical activity increased VO2 max by an average of 12 percent (L/min) to 16 percent (ml/kg). 369, 375, 434

One study that compared different formats and intensities of physical activity on VO2 max reported that improvement in VO2 max was related to adherence to the physical activity regime. In that study, the lower-intensity program was equally effective on VO2 max as a higher-intensity program, largely as a result of different levels of adherence. 401

The results of the RCTs strongly demonstrate that physical activity increases cardiorespiratory fitness in overweight and obese individuals.

**RECOMMENDATION:** Physical activity is recommended as part of a comprehensive weight loss therapy and weight maintenance program because it: (1) modestly contributes to weight loss in overweight and obese adults (Evidence Category A), (2) may decrease abdominal fat (Evidence Category B), (3) increases cardiorespiratory fitness (Evidence Category A), and (4) may help with maintenance of weight loss (Evidence Category C).
3. Combined Therapy (Diet and Physical Activity)

Twenty-three RCT articles investigated the effects on body weight of a combination of a reduced calorie diet with increased physical activity. The control groups used diet alone or physical activity alone.

Of the 15 studies deemed acceptable, each of them compared the combined intervention with diet alone, and 6 of them also compared the combined intervention to physical activity alone. The studies varied in terms of the length of the active intervention period as well as the length of the follow-up. Many of the programs lasted for more than 6 months, and five studies had intervention or follow-up data for at least 1 year.

The studies included patients with type 2 diabetes. Participants in the diet and physical activity group most often participated in supervised group-based physical activity consisting of 30- to 60-minute sessions 3 times a week, and they were encouraged to maintain a maximum heart rate between 60 and 80 percent. There were three diet components: general dietary advice, calorific reduction of 500 to 1,000 kcal per day, or a diet containing 1,200 kcal per day.

**Evidence Statement:** The combination of a reduced calorie diet and increased physical activity produces greater weight loss than diet alone or physical activity alone.

Evidence Category A.

**Rationale:** Of the 15 RCT articles, 12 observed that the combined diet and physical activity group had a mean greater weight loss of 1.9 kg (4.2 lb) and a mean greater BMI reduction of 0.4 (range of 0.3 to 0.5) than the diet-alone group.

One study compared different forms of physical activity in combination with diet and found that, compared to diet alone, the greatest weight loss occurred when the combination intervention included both aerobic and resistance training: 0.9 kg (2 lb) greater weight loss than aerobic exercise plus diet. Another study reported that participants receiving resistance training in combination with diet had 2.2 and 5.0 kg (4.9 and 11 lb) greater weight loss than the diet-alone group after 24 and 48 weeks, respectively.

Five of the six studies that compared combined intervention with physical activity alone observed that the combined intervention group had a 5.3 kg (11.7 lb) (range of 3.6 to 6.2 kg) (7.9 to 13.7 lb) greater weight loss and 0.9 change in BMI unit than the physical activity-alone group. Two studies included patients with type 2 diabetes. Participants in the diet and physical activity group most often participated in supervised group-based physical activity consisting of 30- to 60-minute sessions 3 times a week, and they were encouraged to maintain a maximum heart rate between 60 and 80 percent. There were three diet components: general dietary advice, calorific reduction of 500 to 1,000 kcal per day, or a diet containing 1,200 kcal per day.

**Evidence Statement:** The combination of a reduced calorie diet and increased physical activity produces greater reductions in abdominal fat than either diet alone or physical activity alone, although it has not been shown to be independent of weight loss.

Evidence Category B.

**Rationale:** Three RCTs that examined the combined effect of diet and physical activity on weight loss also had measures of abdominal fat, as measured by waist circumference. Two of the three RCTs showed that the combination intervention resulted in greater reduction in waist cir-
cumference than diet alone in men 365, 375 and (only one) in women. 375 In the other RCT, no differences in reduced waist circumference were observed. 471 Of the three RCTs comparing combination therapy to physical activity alone, one study reported a greater waist reduction of 2.7 to 3.8 cm in women and men, respectively, 375 and by less than 1 cm in another study. 365 The effects of combination therapy on abdominal fat in these studies are not separable from the effects on weight loss.

**Evidence Statement:** A combination of a reduced calorie diet and increased physical activity improves cardiorespiratory fitness as measured by VO2 max when compared to diet alone. Evidence Category A.

**Rationale:** Nine RCTs examined the effect of a combination of diet and physical activity on fitness compared to diet alone. 346, 375, 377, 380, 434, 435, 445. In most studies, the physical activity was in the range of 60 to 80 percent VO2 max. All nine RCTs showed that a combination of diet and physical activity improved cardiorespiratory fitness, as measured by VO2 max, more than diet alone, whether reported relative to body mass in ml O2/kg/min or in absolute values by ml O2/min. 346, 375, 377, 380, 434, 435, 445, 448, 475 Studies of longer duration tended to show the greatest improvement. This improvement was significant in six of the studies. 346, 375, 377, 380, 434, 448

**RECOMMENDATION:** The combination of a reduced calorie diet and increased physical activity is recommended, since it produces weight loss, decreases abdominal fat, and increases cardiorespiratory fitness. Evidence Category A.

### 4. Behavior Therapy

Behavior therapy constitutes those strategies, based on learning principles such as reinforcement, that provide tools for overcoming barriers to compliance with dietary therapy and/or increased physical activity. Two questions are important in assessing the effect of behavior therapy in the treatment of overweight and obesity. First, does behavior therapy provide additional benefits above and beyond the other weight loss approaches—diet, physical activity, or drug therapy? Second, are there behavioral strategies that are more effective than others?

#### 4.a. Additional Benefits Beyond Other Weight Loss Approaches

Thirty-six RCT articles were examined to evaluate whether behavior therapy provides additional benefits beyond other weight loss approaches. The acceptable RCTs compared behavior therapy plus another weight loss strategy to that weight loss strategy without behavior therapy.

**Evidence Statement:** Behavior therapy, when used in combination with other weight loss approaches, provides additional benefits in assisting patients to lose weight short term (1 year). Evidence Category B. No additional benefits are found at 3 to 5 years in the absence of continued intervention. Evidence Category B.

**Rationale:** Four RCTs addressed the question of whether behavior therapy, in order to reinforce a healthy diet, provides additional benefits above and beyond other weight loss approaches. Three studies compared behavior therapy plus dietary intervention to a dietary intervention alone. 436, 476, 477 No studies were found that examined the added benefit of behavior therapy when combined with either physical activity or diet and physical activity. One study was found that compared behavior therapy to drug therapy. 478
One study compared 36 obese women in one of three groups of 12 participating in a 16-week intervention: (1) individual counseling; (2) group counseling; and (3) group counseling plus behavior therapy. All groups lost weight at the end of treatment, and there were no significant differences among the groups. By the 1-year follow-up, participants in groups 1 and 3 were equally successful in maintaining weight loss, while most participants in group 2 regained most of their weight.\footnote{476}

Other studies examined the effect of VLCD alone and in combination with behavior therapy.\footnotereference{436, 477} Subjects were randomly assigned to either: (1) VLCD alone; (2) behavior therapy plus LCD (1,000 to 1,200 kcal), denoted as the behavior therapy-alone group; or (3) VLCD plus behavior therapy (combined treatment). They were assessed at the end of treatment and at 1- and 5-year follow-ups. At the end of treatment, and at the 1-year follow-up, weight loss was significantly greater for the combination group compared to the other two groups. About one-third of those receiving behavior therapy (either in combination with an LCD or VLCD) were able to maintain their full end-of-treatment weight loss at 1 year, compared to only 5 percent of those in the diet-alone group. By the 5-year follow-up, the mean weight loss was not significantly different across groups.

Thus, although the weight loss results of behavioral treatment in combination with either an LCD or VLCD were quite good at the end of treatment and at the 1-year follow-up, they were not maintained by 5 years. These results may well have been due to the infrequent practice of the behavioral strategies by the subjects. Wadden and colleagues recommended that patients participate in a 6- to 12-month weight maintenance program after weight loss (which subjects did not do in the study described above), and that if they experience a gain of \( \geq 5 \) kg (11 lb) which they cannot reverse on their own, that they should reenter a weight loss therapy program.

One study assessed the short- and long-term weight loss of behavior therapy, fenfluramine, or a combination of the two in 120 obese women.\footnote{478} Patients in the drug group and those in the combined drug plus behavior therapy group lost significantly more weight than did the group that received behavior therapy only and the control group; the drug-only group and combination group did not differ from each other at the end of the 6-month treatment. However, at the 1-year follow-up, significantly less weight was regained by the patients in the behavior-therapy-only group compared to the combined treatment group and the pharmacotherapy group, resulting in significantly better overall net weight loss. Results of this study suggest that the various interventions had different effects at the end of treatment and at follow-up.

To summarize, three of the four studies demonstrated that behavior therapy, when used in conjunction with other weight loss approaches, was more effective in reducing weight or delaying weight regain, either at the end of treatment or at the 1-year follow-up or both.\footnotereference{476-478} Behavior therapy was not better in its effect on weight loss at the 5-year follow-up.

No RCTs examined the additional effect of behavior therapy combined with diet and physical activity on cardiorespiratory fitness or abdominal fat.

4.b. Comparison of Behavior Therapy Strategies

Another way to examine the efficacy of behavior therapy in the treatment of overweight and obesity is to evaluate studies that compare various behavioral techniques with one another. Of 31 RCTs that compared one or more behavioral interventions, 19 were deemed acceptable.
Evidence Statement: No one behavior therapy appeared superior to any other in its effect on weight loss; rather, multimodal strategies appeared to work best and those interventions with the greatest intensity appeared to be associated with the greatest weight loss. Evidence Category A.

Of the 19 RCTs, 17 produced weight loss. Behavioral strategies to reinforce changes in diet and physical activity in obese adults produce weight loss in the range of 10 percent of baseline over 4 months to 1 year. The greatest amount of weight loss was usually observed in less than 12 months of the intervention; however, weight loss was observed for up to 2½ years in some studies. Multimodal strategies worked best, and the intensity (number of contacts and duration) and degree (albeit difficult to discern in some of these studies) of a particular reinforcement were most related to weight loss. Although initial therapy proved successful, it also appeared that when behavioral therapy ceased, weight was regained on average, but not all subjects relapsed back to baseline levels. Ten of the 19 studies were based on at least 1-year results.

Fourteen trials compared different behavior therapy strategies. Two trials compared cognitive behavior therapy techniques, specifically cognitive rehearsal, social pressure, and cue avoidance (see Glossary) with other behavior therapies. With regard to weight loss, cognitive rehearsal was no more effective than the group support or “social pressure” condition and was less effective than cue avoidance. Another study indicated no clear benefits for cognitive rehearsal above and beyond other behavioral strategies. One of two studies that assessed the effect of monetary incentives reported greater weight loss.

The effect of extending treatment in various ways was evaluated in several studies. One study evaluated 20 weeks versus 40 weeks of standard behavior therapy and found greater weight loss with the extended therapy that was maintained at 72 weeks. Another study evaluated behavior therapy and the effect of a post-treatment therapist on weight loss. The study evaluated the effect of extended treatment using therapist contact in general, therapist contact emphasizing social influence, and extended treatment emphasizing physical activity. The emphasis of physical activity plus social influence produced greater weight loss than not having contact emphasizing these components. Extended contact with a therapist produced about 10 kg (22 lb) greater weight loss than no extended contact, even over the long term. At 18 months, all strategies that combined behavior therapy with a post-treatment maintenance program yielded a significantly greater long-term weight loss than behavior therapy alone.

Another study examined the effect of extending cognitive behavior therapy for 3 months in addition to the initial 3 months of therapy for obese patients with binge eating disorder, and found that extended cognitive behavior therapy improved binge eating behavior, although not weight. A pilot study of women with type 2 diabetes compared a 16-week group-behavioral weight loss program to the same group, but with three individualized motivational interviewing sessions added. Both groups demonstrated significant weight loss with the motivational group losing 5.5 kg (12.1 lb) on average and the standard behavioral group losing 4.5 kg (9.9 lb); there were no differences between the two. However, those in the motivational interviewing group demonstrated better attendance at meetings (attending on average 13.3 meetings versus 8.9 meetings), had significantly better glucose control, and recorded blood glucose and food diaries more frequently than did members of the standard behavioral group.
A study that involved self-instruction plus incentives versus group instruction plus incentives demonstrated no effect of the group treatment on weight loss. Weight loss was positively associated with attendance; however, mandatory attendance did not seem to increase program effectiveness and seemed to discourage attendance among men. The program was equally effective when implemented through either self-help materials or by professionals. Another study compared stimulus-narrowing during the reintroduction of food (achieved by providing prepackaged food) for those on VLCDs to providing regular food during the reintroduction. They also compared reintroduction of foods based on progress in losing weight or maintaining weight loss versus a time-dependent basis. Neither strategy was helpful in maximizing weight loss or weight maintenance.

Two trials evaluated the impact of spousal involvement versus no spousal involvement in behavior therapy. One study found no overall differences in weight loss between those treated with spouses and those treated without spouses; however, women lost more weight when treated with a spouse, and men did better when treated alone (P < .01 at end of treatment; P < .06 at 1 year). Another study found a positive effect of spousal involvement on weight loss soon after treatment was completed; however, this effect had largely dissipated by the 3-year follow-up.

In summary, a variety of behavioral therapy strategies promote weight loss, with no one particular behavioral strategy having the greatest efficacy. Multimodal strategies with greater intensity appear to be most effective.

**Evidence Statement:** Long-term follow-up of patients undergoing behavior therapy shows a return to baseline weight in the great majority of subjects in the absence of continued behavioral intervention. Evidence Category B.

**Rationale:** Studies have shown that while weight loss is achieved, it is very difficult to maintain over a long period of time (1 to 5 years) in the absence of continued intervention. This emphasizes the great importance of continuing a maintenance program on a long-term basis.

**Evidence Statement:** Little evidence exists on the effect of behavior therapy in combination with diet and physical activity on cardiorespiratory fitness.

**Rationale:** One RCT examined the impact of different levels of behavior therapy in combination with diet and aerobic exercise on cardiorespiratory fitness. Subjects were randomly assigned to one of three groups which varied in their degree of training in, and detailed application of, behavioral change principles (described as the basic, extended, and maximal behavioral therapy groups). All groups incorporated frequent intensive therapist contact, self-monitoring of behavior, regular objective assessment, and feedback of change in status. The three groups differed in the degree of emphasis given to behavioral self-management training, amount of detail provided on individual risk factors and overall coronary heart disease risk, and establishment of realistic short-term goals for coronary risk factor change. In terms of cardiorespiratory fitness, the group receiving the extended behavioral therapy and the group receiving the maximal behavior therapy showed improvements in VO\textsubscript{2} max of 2.90 and 3.40 mL/kg/min, respectively, when compared with controls who...
received the basic behavior therapy. However, it is unlikely that behavior therapy caused these improvements independent of weight loss.

No RCT evidence exists on the effect of behavior therapy combined with diet and physical activity on changes in abdominal fat as measured by waist circumference.

**RECOMMENDATION:** Behavior therapy is a useful adjunct when incorporated into treatment for weight loss and weight maintenance. Evidence Category B.

**Commentary: Do the same treatment approaches for overweight and obesity fit diverse patient populations?**

Whether or not the same weight reduction program will accomplish equivalent weight change in ethnically diverse population groups can be questioned on theoretical grounds. Weight reduction programs address motivations and behaviors strongly influenced by sociocultural factors that vary with ethnicity. Sociocultural factors may also influence the relative efficacy of behavioral programs in young, middle, and older adulthood; men or women; or any other patient groups where the motivations and lifestyle factors targeted may vary from those commonly assumed to be in operation. Innate or acquired physiological factors that affect energy metabolism may also influence the relative efficacy of behavioral weight reduction programs. For example, some cross-sectional comparisons have suggested that the relative weight loss achieved for a given degree of calorie restriction will be lower in African-Americans than whites because of a lower resting metabolic rate in African-Americans. Another study suggests metabolic influences on weight loss in premenopausal versus postmenopausal women.

The diversity of populations in obesity treatment studies is limited, and there is not a coherent body of studies evaluating systematic differences in the outcomes of overweight and obesity treatment by age, socioeconomic status, or other participant characteristics that might be expected to influence outcome. However, the possibility of differences in the effectiveness of behavioral weight reduction approaches between African-Americans and whites has been suggested by reports from several intervention studies. In some of these trials, weight reduction was the only intervention; in other instances it was combined with sodium reduction or other dietary or lifestyle changes. Taken together, these studies suggest that, on average, within the same program, weight losses of African-Americans are less than those of their white counterparts, particularly among women. A formal analysis of this issue in two RCTs—the Hypertension Prevention Trial and Phase 1 of the Trials of Hypertension Prevention—suggested that the weight gain in control participants was also higher among African-Americans than whites, but, in women, the net weight loss (i.e., active intervention minus control) was still less in African-Americans. There is ample evidence to support explanations of this differential weight loss on the basis of cultural or behavioral factors related to program adherence. However, data to evaluate the alternative or additional contribution of metabolic factors to this differential are lacking. To date, no published studies permit separation of metabolic and behavioral influences on the observed ethnic differences in weight loss. (Also see commentary on pages 89 to 91 under treatment guidelines.)
RECOMMENDATION: The possibility that a standard approach to weight loss will work differently in diverse patient populations must be considered when setting expectations about treatment outcomes. Evidence Category B.

5. Pharmacotherapy

Since 1995, the use of the prescription drugs fenfluramine or dexfenfluramine for weight loss had increased greatly to 14 million prescriptions in 1½ years. The increased interest in drug treatment of obesity derives from the poor long-term results often obtained with behavior therapy, including diet and physical activity, as noted earlier in this report. The rationale for the addition of drugs to these regimens is that a more successful weight loss and maintenance may ensue. However, as of September 1997, the FDA requested the voluntary withdrawal of fenfluramine and dexfenfluramine from the market, due to a reported association between valvular heart disease with the drugs dexfenfluramine and fenfluramine, alone or combined with phentermine. In November 1997, the FDA provided clearance for marketing the drug sibutramine hydrochloride monohydrate for the management of obesity, including weight loss and maintenance of weight loss when used in conjunction with a reduced-calorie diet. Due to the rapidly evolving information regarding the use of pharmacotherapy for weight loss, the panel decided to present their critique of those pharmacotherapy trials meeting their criteria for consideration.

Forty RCT articles evaluated the effect of pharmacotherapy on weight loss. In most studies, advice or behavioral therapy promoting reduced energy intake and increased physical activity was included in all treatment arms, including the placebo group.

Drugs that have been evaluated alone or in combination for at least 1 year by RCTs are phentermine, d,l-fenfluramine, dexfenfluramine, sibutramine, and orlistat. Two reports addressing dexfenfluramine represent a subset of a larger multicenter trial, the International Dexfenfluramine Study (INDEX trial). Of the nine trials with dexfenfluramine, four had interventions of approximately 1 year, three of approximately 6 months, and two of 3 months. Most of the trials included a majority of white women, and some included persons with diabetes. Most of the trials have weight regain data. One RCT evaluated the effect of dexfenfluramine versus placebo on patients who had been on an 8-week VLCD for an additional 24 weeks. One RCT evaluated the effect of phentermine versus placebo on patients with osteoarthritis. One RCT evaluated the effect of various doses of sibutramine on weight loss over a 24-week period. Two RCTs of 12 and 8 weeks in duration studied phenylpropanolamine versus placebo. One used phenylpropanolamine with diet, and the other with diet, exercise, and behavior therapy. Phenylpropanolamine is available as an over-the-counter drug. The average weight loss after 8 weeks of treatment was 2.59 kg (5.7 lb) for the drug versus 1.07 kg (2.4 lb) for the placebo, a difference of 1.5 kg (3.3 lb). Short-term, but not long-term (over 1 year), effectiveness has been documented.

Evidence Statement: Pharmacotherapy, which has generally been studied along with lifestyle modification including diet and physical activity, using dexfenfluramine, sibutramine, orlistat, or phentermine/fenfluramine, results in weight loss in obese adults when used for 6 months to 1 year. Evidence Category B.
Chapter 3: Examination of Randomized Controlled Trial Evidence

**Rationale:** Data reporting the results of 52 weeks of drug treatment are available only for dexfenfluramine, orlistat, phentermine, d,l-fenfluramine, and sibutramine. The effect on weight loss from these drugs after 1 year is modest: 2.6 kg (5.7 lb) difference on average between dexfenfluramine and placebo (9.8 kg [21.6 lb] versus 7.2 kg [15.9 lb], baseline weights of 98.0 kg [216 lb] and 96.6 kg [213 lb]). 507 For sibutramine, a difference of 2.8 kg (6.2 lb) was seen at 1 year (4.4 kg [9.7 lb] versus 1.6 kg [3.5 lb]). 513 In another study of sibutramine, the difference was a net loss of 5.5 kg (12.1 lb) at 24 weeks with a 20 mg dose. 530 In all of the weight loss studies that were up to 1 year in duration, the majority of the weight loss occurred in the first 6 months with a plateauing or actual increase in weight in the following 6 months. 388, 389, 507, 514 For orlistat, a difference of 2.2 kg (4.9 lb) (4.3 kg [9.5 lb] versus 2.1 kg [4.6 lb]) was found in a 16-week study. 507 After a 210-week study on phentermine and d,l-fenfluramine, participants averaged a weight loss of 1.4 kg (3.1 lb) from baseline weight at week 210. 395, 514

There are no known pharmacologic agents whose specific effect is to reduce abdominal fat or to improve cardiorespiratory fitness. Any improvements in abdominal fat or fitness would be secondary to weight loss or other interventions.

Sibutramine is approved for long-term use. (Note: FDA approval of orlistat is pending a resolution of labeling issues and results of Phase III trials.) Such drugs can then be used as an adjunct to modifications in behavior, including diet and physical activity. Drugs should be discontinued if significant weight loss is not achieved, i.e., a loss of < 4 pounds in the first 4 weeks, or if serious adverse effects occur.

---

**RECOMMENDATION:** Weight loss drugs may only be used as part of a comprehensive weight loss program including diet and physical activity for patients with a BMI of ≥30 with no concomitant obesity-related risk factors or diseases, or for patients with a BMI of ≥27 with concomitant obesity-related risk factors or diseases. Evidence Category B.

---

6. Surgery

Fourteen RCTs compared the weight-reducing effect of different surgical interventions. They did not compare surgery versus no intervention. Because of the nature of the intervention, there is a reluctance to do such a randomized trial.

**Evidence Statement:** Surgical interventions in adults with a BMI ≥ 40 or a BMI ≥ 35 with comorbid conditions result in substantial weight loss. Evidence Category B.

**Rationale:** Of the 14 RCTs that examined the effect of surgical procedures on weight loss, 8 were deemed appropriate. All the studies included individuals who had a BMI of 40 kg/m² or above, or a BMI of 35 to 40 kg/m² with comorbidity; most of the study participants were women. Weight loss due to surgical intervention such as the gastric bypass ranged from 50 kg (110 lb) to as much as 100 kg (220 lb) over a period of 6 months to 1 year. Gastroplasty with diet had a favorable net outcome on weight loss after 2 years compared to diet alone. 515 Vertical-banded gastroplasty was more effective than horizontal-banded gastroplasty. 516 Gastric resection with a modest biliopancreatic diversion without intestinal exclusion resulted in significantly greater weight loss than conventional Roux-en Y
gastric bypass; this long-limb modification of Roux-en Y gastric bypass was shown to be safe and effective in patients who were 200 lb or more overweight and did not cause additional metabolic sequelae or diarrhea. 517

The Swedish Obesity Study (SOS), 518 a non-RCT, found that gastric bypass produced greater weight loss than gastroplasty, 42.3 kg (93.3 lb) versus 29.9 kg (67 lb), at 1 year. The gastric bypass was deemed superior to gastroplasty or gastric partitioning in other RCTs as well. 518-522

The SOS also evaluated the correlation between stoma size and weight loss in patients assigned to gastric bypass or gastroplasty, and found no significant correlation in the gastric bypass group.

Comorbidity factors associated with weight loss showed improvement after surgery. One study showed that medical illnesses either improved (47 percent) or resolved (43 percent) in all but four patients (9 percent), and these four had unsatisfactory weight loss. 517 The Adelaide Study showed that 60 percent of the patients who initially had obesity-related comorbidity were free of medication for these comorbidities 3 years after surgery. 519

Extremely obese persons often do not benefit from the more conservative treatments for weight loss and weight maintenance. Obesity severely impairs quality of life, and these individuals are at higher risk for premature death. 523

The National Institutes of Health Consensus Development Conference consensus statement, “Gastrointestinal Surgery for Severe Obesity,” 98 concluded that the benefits outweigh the risks and that this more aggressive approach is reasonable in individuals who strongly desire substantial weight loss and have life-threatening comorbid conditions.

The effects of surgery on abdominal fat or cardiorespiratory fitness independent of weight loss are unknown. One small study demonstrated that surgery (adjustable silicone gastric banding) reduced abdominal visceral fat. No analyses were performed to examine whether visceral fat reduction was independent of weight loss. 524

There are no data on the effects of surgery on changes in cardiorespiratory fitness.

**RECOMMENDATION:** Surgical intervention is an option for carefully selected patients with clinically severe obesity (a BMI ≥40 or ≥35 with comorbid conditions) when less invasive methods of weight loss have failed and the patient is at high risk for obesity-associated morbidity and mortality. Evidence Category B.

7. Other Interventions for Overweight and Obesity Treatment

Other types of interventions considered for overweight and obesity treatment included acupuncture, herbal remedies, supplements, and hypnosis. However, these treatments did not fulfill the *a priori* inclusion criteria, and for that reason were not included in this review.
OVERVIEW

The presence of overweight and obesity in a patient is of medical concern because it increases the risk for several diseases, particularly cardiovascular diseases (CVDs) and diabetes mellitus (see Chapter 2.C.) and it increases all-cause mortality. Treatment of the overweight and obese patient is a two-step process: assessment and management. Assessment requires determination of the degree of obesity and absolute risk status. Management includes both weight control or reducing excess body weight and maintaining that weight loss as well as instituting other measures to control associated risk factors. The aim of this guideline is to provide useful advice on how to achieve weight reduction and maintenance of a lower body weight. Obesity is a chronic disease, and both the patient and the practitioner need to understand that successful treatment requires a life-long effort.

ASSESSMENT AND CLASSIFICATION OF OVERWEIGHT AND OBESITY

1. Assessment of Overweight and Obesity
   - Determination of total body fat. Overweight is defined as a body mass index (BMI) of 25 to 29.9 kg/m². Obesity is defined as an excess of total body fat that is documented by a BMI of ≥30 kg/m². Several methods are available for determining or calculating total body fat: total body water, total body potassium, bioelectrical impedance, and dual-energy X-ray absorptiometry.

   **Evidence Statement:** Measures of body fat give reasonably equivalent values for following overweight or obese patients during treatment. Evidence Category D.

   **Rationale:** Even though accurate methods to assess body fat exist, measuring body fat content by these techniques is often expensive and is not readily available clinically. Although bioelectrical impedance devices are becoming more readily available, they lose accuracy in severely obese persons and are of limited usefulness for tracking changes in total body fat in persons losing weight. Thus, bioelectrical impedance offers no significant advantage over BMI in the clinical management of patients. No trial data exist to indicate that one measure of fatness is better than any other for following overweight and obese patients during treatment. No studies have been published to compare the effectiveness of different measures for evaluating changes in body fat during weight reduction. BMI provides a more accurate measure of total body fat than relying on weight alone. It has an advantage over percent above ideal weight (e.g., based on the Metropolitan Life Insurance Tables). Ideal body weight tables were developed primarily from white, higher socioeconomic status populations and have not been documented to accurately reflect body fat content in the public at large. In addition, separate tables are required for men and women. The weight tables also are based on
mortality outcomes and do not necessarily predict morbidity. BMI is recommended as a practical approach for the clinical setting. BMI provides an acceptable approximation for assessment of total body fat for the majority of patients. However, simply measuring body weight is a practical approach to follow weight changes.

**RECOMMENDATION:** Practitioners should use the BMI to assess overweight and obesity. Body weight alone can be used to follow weight loss and to determine efficacy of therapy. Evidence Category C.

**Rationale:** The panel concentrated on tools available in the office, i.e., weight, height and the BMI. BMI is a practical indicator of the severity of obesity, and it can be calculated from existing tables. BMI is a direct calculation based on height and weight, regardless of gender. The limitations of BMI as a measure of total body fat, nonetheless, must be recognized. For example, BMI overestimates body fat in persons who are very muscular and can underestimate body fat in persons who have lost muscle mass (e.g., the elderly).

The BMI is calculated as follows:

\[
\text{BMI} = \frac{\text{weight (kg)}}{\text{height squared (m}^2)}
\]

To estimate BMI from pounds and inches use:

\[
[ \text{weight (pounds)}/ \text{height (inches)}^2] \times 703
\]

\[
(1 \text{ lb} = 0.4536 \text{ kg})
\]

\[
(1 \text{ in} = 2.54 \text{ cm} = 0.0254 \text{ m})
\]

A simple BMI chart is provided in Appendix V. A patient should be weighed with shoes off and clad only in a light robe or undergarments.

- **Determination of degree of abdominal obesity.**
  The presence of excess fat in the abdomen, out of proportion to total body fat, is an independent predictor of risk factors and morbidity. Relatively accurate measures of total abdominal fat can be made by magnetic resonance imaging or computed tomography. These methods, however, are expensive and not readily available for clinical practice. Research with these techniques, nonetheless, has shown that the waist circumference correlates with the amount of fat in the abdomen, and thus is an indicator of the severity of abdominal obesity. In this document the term “waist” circumference is used instead of “abdominal” circumference because it more accurately describes the anatomical site of measurement.

**Evidence Statement:** Waist circumference is the most practical anthropometric measurement for assessing a patient’s abdominal fat content before and during weight loss treatment. Computed tomography and magnetic resonance imaging are both more accurate but are impractical for routine clinical use. Evidence Category C.

**Rationale:** Fat located in the abdominal region is associated with greater health risks than that in peripheral regions, e.g., the gluteal-femoral area. Abdominal fat is described as having three compartments: visceral, retroperitoneal, and subcutaneous. Several studies suggest that the visceral fat component of abdominal fat is the most strongly correlated with risk factors; other studies, however, indicate that the subcutaneous component is the most highly correlated with insulin resistance. Therefore, the relative contributions of different components of abdominal fat to overall risk remain to be determined with certainty. Nonetheless, the presence of increased total abdominal fat appears to be an independent risk.
predictor when the BMI is not markedly increased. Therefore, waist or abdominal circumference, as well as BMI, should be measured not only for the initial assessment of obesity, but also as a guide to the efficacy of weight loss treatment.

The waist-to-hip ratio (WHR) also has been used in a number of epidemiologic studies to show increased risk for diabetes, coronary artery disease, and hypertension. However, waist circumference has been found to be a better marker of abdominal fat content than is WHR. Whether WHR imparts any independent information about disease risk beyond waist circumference is uncertain, but between the two, the waist circumference appears to carry greater prognostic significance. Therefore, in clinical practice, abdominal fat content should be assessed and followed by measuring waist circumference.

**RECOMMENDATION:** The waist circumference should be used to assess abdominal fat content. Evidence Category C.

### 2. Classification of Overweight and Obesity

- **According to BMI.** The primary classification of obesity is based on the measurement of BMI. This classification is designed to relate BMI to risk of disease. It should be noted that the relation between BMI and disease risk varies among individuals and among different populations. Therefore, the classification must be viewed as a broad generalization. Individuals who are very muscular may have a BMI placing them in an overweight category when they are not overly fat. Also, very short persons (under 5 feet) may have high BMIs that may not reflect overweight or fatness. In addition, susceptibility to risk factors at a given weight varies among individuals. Some individuals may have multiple risk factors.
with mild obesity, whereas others may have fewer risk factors with more severe obesity. It should also be noted that the risk levels shown for each increment in risk are relative risks; that is, relative to risk at normal weight. They should not be equated with absolute risk which is determined by a summation of risk factors. No randomized controlled trial studies exist that support a specific system for classification that establishes the degree of disease risk for patients during weight loss or weight maintenance. The classification is based on observational and prospective epidemiological studies.

Figure 5. Measuring tape position for waist (abdominal) circumference
**RECOMMENDATION:** The BMI* should be used to classify overweight and obesity and to estimate relative risk for disease compared to normal weight. Evidence Category C.

**Rationale:** Overweight and obesity are classified by BMI (see Table IV-1).

Calculating BMI is simple, rapid, and inexpensive. The classification can be applied generally to adults. See Appendix III for comments about obesity and its classification in children. The basis for this BMI classification scheme stems from observational and epidemiologic studies which relate BMI to risk of morbidity and mortality. 11, 81-83, 131, 155, 278, 539-541 For example, relative risk for CVD increases in a graded fashion with increasing BMI in all population groups, although absolute risk in obese versus nonobese persons depends on the summed contribution of all risk factors.

Evidence Statement: The same BMI cutpoints (see Table IV-1) can be used to classify the level of overweight and obesity for adult men and adult nonpregnant women, and generally for all racial/ethnic groups. Evidence Category C.

**Rationale:** Clinical judgment must be used in interpreting BMI in situations in which it may not be an accurate indicator of total body fat. Examples are the presence of edema, high muscularity, muscle wasting, or for very short people. The relationship between BMI and body fat content varies somewhat with age, sex, and possibly ethnicity because of differences in factors such as composition of lean tissue, sitting height, and hydration state. 526, 542 For example, older persons often have lost muscle mass and have more fat for a given BMI than younger persons, women may have more fat for a given BMI than men, and persons with clinical edema

---

**TABLE IV-1:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Classification of Overweight and Obesity by BMI*</th>
<th>Obesity Class</th>
<th>BMI (kg/m²)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Underweight</td>
<td></td>
<td>&lt; 18.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Normal</td>
<td></td>
<td>18.5 – 24.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overweight</td>
<td></td>
<td>25.0 – 29.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obesity</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>30.0 – 34.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>II</td>
<td>35.0 – 39.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extreme Obesity</td>
<td>III</td>
<td>≥ 40</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Pregnant women who, on the basis of their prepregnant weight, would be classified as obese may encounter certain obstetrical risks. However, the inappropriateness of weight reduction during pregnancy is well recognized. 44 Hence, this guideline specifically excludes pregnant women.

may have less fat for a given BMI than persons without edema. Nevertheless, these differences generally do not markedly influence the validity of BMI cutpoints either for classifying individuals into broad categories of overweight and obesity or for monitoring weight status of individuals in clinical settings. 526

- According to waist circumference. Although waist circumference and BMI are interrelated, waist circumference provides an independent prediction of risk over and above that of BMI. Waist circumference measurement is particularly useful in patients who are categorized as normal or overweight on the BMI scale. At BMIs ≥ 35, waist circumference has little added predictive power of disease risk beyond that of BMI. It is therefore not necessary to measure waist circumference in individuals with BMIs ≥ 35.

**Evidence Statement:** Sex-specific cutoffs for waist circumference can be used to identify increased risk associated with abdominal fat in adults with a BMI in the range of 25 to 34.9 kg/m². An increase in waist circumference may also be associated with increased risk in persons of normal weight. Evidence Category C.

Waist circumference cutpoints can generally be applied to all adult ethnic or racial groups. On the other hand, if a patient is very short (under 5 feet) or has a BMI above the 25 to 34.9 kg/m² range, waist cutpoints used for the general population may not be applicable. Evidence Category D.

**Rationale:** A high waist circumference is associated with an increased risk for type 2 diabetes, dyslipidemia, hypertension, and CVD in patients with a BMI in a range between 25 and 34.9 kg/m². Monitoring changes in waist circumference over time may be helpful, in addition to measuring BMI, since it can provide an estimate of increased abdominal fat even in the absence of a change in BMI. Furthermore, in obese patients with metabolic complications, changes in waist circumference are useful predictors of changes in CVD risk factors. 537 The waist circumference at which there is an increased relative risk is defined as follows:

### High Risk

- Men > 102 cm (> 40 in)
- Women > 88 cm (> 35 in)

To evaluate health risks, it is not necessary to measure waist circumference in patients with a BMI ≥ 35 kg/m²; the measurement usually will be greater than the cutpoints given above, and waist measurements lose their predictive power at very high BMIs.

There are ethnic and age-related differences in body fat distribution that modify the predictive validity of waist circumference as a surrogate for abdominal fat. 526 These variations may partly explain differences between ethnic or age groups in the power of waist circumference or WHR to predict disease risks. 429, 545

In some populations, waist circumference is a better indicator of relative disease risk than is BMI; examples include Asian-Americans or persons of Asian descent living elsewhere. 51, 273, 544 Waist circumference also assumes greater value for estimating risk for obesity-related disease at older ages. Table IV-2 incorporates both BMI and waist circumference in the classification of overweight and obesity, and provides an indication of disease risk.
**RECOMMENDATION:** For adult patients with a BMI of 25 to 34.9 kg/m², sex-specific waist circumference cutoffs should be used in conjunction with BMI to identify increased disease risk. Evidence Category C.

**ASSESSMENT OF RISK STATUS**

The patient’s risk status should be assessed by determining the degree of overweight or obesity based on BMI, the presence of abdominal obesity based on waist circumference, and the presence of concomitant CVD risk factors or comorbidities. Some obesity-associated diseases and risk factors place patients in a very high risk category for subsequent mortality. These diseases will require aggressive modification of risk factors in addition to their own clinical management. Other obesity-associated diseases are less lethal, but still require appropriate clinical therapy. Obesity also has an aggravating influence on several cardiovascular risk factors. Identifying these risk factors is required as a guide to the intensity of clinical intervention.

1. **Determination of relative risk status based on overweight and obesity parameters.**

Table IV-2 defines relative risk categories according to BMI and waist circumference. It is important to note that these categories denote relative risk, not absolute risk. They relate to the need to institute weight loss therapy, and do not directly define the required intensity of risk factor modification. The latter is determined by estimation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Classification of Overweight and Obesity by BMI, Waist Circumference and Associated Disease Risk*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em><em>Disease Risk</em> Relative to Normal Weight and Waist Circumference</em>*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>BMI (kg/m²)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Underweight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Normal+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overweight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obesity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extreme Obesity</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Disease risk for type 2 diabetes, hypertension, and CVD.
+ Increased waist circumference can also be a marker for increased risk even in persons of normal weight.


62
of absolute risk based on the presence of associated disease or risk factors.

2. **Identification of patients at very high absolute risk.**

The following disease conditions or target organ damage in hypertensive patients denote the presence of very high absolute risk that triggers the need for intense risk factor modification as well as disease management. For example, the presence of very high absolute risk indicates the need for aggressive cholesterol-lowering therapy.  

2.a. Established coronary heart disease (CHD)

2.a.1. History of myocardial infarction
2.a.2. History of angina pectoris (stable or unstable)
2.a.3. History of coronary artery surgery
2.a.4. History of coronary artery procedures (angioplasty)

2.b. Presence of other atherosclerotic diseases

2.b.1. Peripheral arterial disease
2.b.2. Abdominal aortic aneurysm
2.b.3. Symptomatic carotid artery disease

2.c. Type 2 diabetes

2.d. Sleep apnea (For more information, see Appendix IV.)

3. **Identification of other obesity-associated diseases.**

Obese patients are at increased risk for several conditions that require detection and appropriate management, but that generally do not lead to widespread or life-threatening consequences. These include:

3.a. Gynecological abnormalities
3.b. Osteoarthritis
3.c. Gallstones and their complications
3.d. Stress incontinence

---


For the treatment of hypertension, the National High Blood Pressure Education Program recently issued the Sixth Report of the Joint National Committee on Prevention, Detection, Evaluation, and Treatment of High Blood Pressure (JNC VI) (1997).  

For the most recent recommendations about type 2 diabetes from the American Diabetes Association, see the ADA Clinical Practice Recommendations (1998).  

Finally, smoking cessation is strongly recommended in obese smokers, with particular attention to methods that diminish the weight gain associated with cessation (see pages 91-92). For strategies and recommendations for supporting and delivering effective smoking cessation intervention, see the Agency for Health Care Policy and Research's Clinical Practice Guidelines on Smoking Cessation.
Although obese patients are at increased risk for gallstones, this risk increases even more during periods of rapid weight reduction.

4. Identification of cardiovascular risk factors that impart a high absolute risk.

Patients can be classified as being at high absolute risk for obesity-related disorders if they have three or more of the multiple risk factors listed below. The presence of high absolute risk increases the intensity of cholesterol-lowering therapy and blood pressure management.

4.a. Cigarette smoking

4.b. Hypertension—A patient is classified as having hypertension if systolic blood pressure is ≥ 140 mm Hg or diastolic blood pressure is ≥ 90 mm Hg, or if the patient is taking antihypertensive agents.

4.c. High-risk low-density lipoprotein cholesterol—A high-risk LDL-cholesterol is defined as a serum concentration of ≥160 mg/dL. A borderline high-risk LDL-cholesterol (130 to 159 mg/dL) together with two or more other risk factors also confers high risk.

4.d. Low high-density lipoprotein cholesterol—A low HDL-cholesterol is defined as a serum concentration of < 35 mg/dL.

4.e. Impaired fasting glucose (IFG)—The presence of clinical type 2 diabetes (fasting plasma glucose of ≥ 126 mg/dL or 2 hours postprandial plasma glucose of ≥ 200 mg/dL) is a major risk factor for CVD, and its presence alone places a patient in the category of very high absolute risk (see above). IFG (fasting plasma glucose 110 to 125 mg/dL) is considered by many authorities to be an independent risk factor for cardiovascular (macrovascular) disease, justifying its inclusion among risk factors contributing to high absolute risk. Although including IFG as a separate risk factor for CVD departs from the ATP II and JNC VI reports, its inclusion in this list may be appropriate. IFG is well established as a risk factor for type 2 diabetes.

4.f. Family history of premature CHD—A positive family history of premature CHD is defined as definite myocardial infarction or sudden death at or before 55 years of age in the father or other male first-degree relative, or at or before 65 years of age in the mother or other female first-degree relative.

4.g. Age

4.g.1. Male ≥ 45 years

4.g.2. Female ≥ 55 years (or postmenopausal)

Methods for estimating absolute risk status for developing CVD based on these risk factors are described in detail in the ATP II and JNC VI reports. The intensity of intervention for high blood cholesterol or hypertension is adjusted depending on the absolute risk estimated by these factors. Approaches to therapy for cholesterol disorders and hypertension are described in the ATP II and JNC VI, respectively.

5. Other risk factors deserve special consideration for their relation to obesity. When these factors are present, patients can be considered to have incremental absolute risk above that estimated from the preceding risk factors. Quantitative risk contributions are not available for these risk factors, but their presence heightens the need for weight reduction in obese persons.

5.a. Physical inactivity—A lack of physical activity imparts an increased risk for both CVD and type 2 diabetes. Physical inactivity enhances the severity of other risk factors, but it also has been shown to be an “independent” risk factor for all-cause mortality or CVD mortality. Although physical inactivity is not listed as a risk factor that modifies the intensity of therapy required for elevated cholesterol or blood pressure, increased physical activity is indicated for management of these conditions (see the ATP II and JNC VI). Increased physical activity is espe-
cially needed in obese patients because it promotes weight reduction and favorably modifies obesity-associated risk factors. Conversely, the presence of physical inactivity in an obese person warrants intensified efforts to remove excess body weight, because physical inactivity and obesity both heighten disease risks.

5.b. High triglycerides—Obesity is commonly accompanied by elevated serum triglycerides. The relationship between high triglycerides and CHD is complex. Triglyceride-rich lipoproteins may be directly atherogenic. In addition, elevated serum triglycerides are the most common manifestation of the atherogenic lipoprotein phenotype (high triglycerides, small LDL particles, and low HDL-cholesterol levels). Moreover, in the presence of obesity, high serum triglycerides are commonly associated with a clustering of metabolic risk factors known as the metabolic syndrome (atherogenic lipoprotein phenotype, hypertension, insulin resistance and glucose intolerance, and prothrombotic states). Thus, in obese patients, elevated serum triglycerides are a marker for increased cardiovascular risk. According to current guidelines (ATP II and JNC VI), the presence of high triglycerides does not modify the intensity of cholesterol or blood pressure-lowering therapy. Their presence in obese patients, however, calls for an intensified effort to achieve weight reduction and increase physical activity. Both will reduce the various risk factors characteristic of the metabolic syndrome, and thus should reduce overall cardiovascular risk as well as decrease the risk for type 2 diabetes.

According to the ATP II guidelines, triglyceride levels are classified as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Serum Triglyceride Levels</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Normal triglycerides</td>
<td>Less than 200 mg/dL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Borderline-high triglycerides</td>
<td>200 to 400 mg/dL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High triglycerides</td>
<td>400 to 1,000 mg/dL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Very high triglycerides</td>
<td>Greater than 1,000 mg/dL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Patients with very high triglycerides are at increased risk for acute pancreatitis and must undergo immediate triglyceride-lowering therapy.

**D Evaluation and Treatment Strategy**

When physicians encounter patients in the clinical setting, the opportunity exists for identifying overweight and obesity and accompanying risk factors and for initiating treatment for both the weight and the risk factors, as well as chronic diseases such as CVD and type 2 diabetes.

When assessing a patient for treatment of overweight and obesity, consider the patient’s weight, waist circumference, and the presence of risk factors. The strategy for the evaluation and treatment of overweight patients is presented in Figure 6 (Treatment Algorithm). This algorithm applies only to the assessment for overweight and obesity and subsequent decisions based on that assessment. It does not reflect any initial overall testing for other conditions and diseases that the physician may wish to do. Approaches to therapy for cholesterol disorders and hypertension are described in ATP II and JNC VI, respectively. In overweight patients, control of cardiovascular risk factors deserves equal emphasis as weight loss therapy. Reductions of risk factors will reduce the risk for cardiovascular disease whether or not efforts at weight loss are successful. The panel recognizes that the assessment for overweight and obesity may take place as part of an overall health assessment; however, for clarity, the algorithm focuses only on the evaluation and treatment of overweight and obesity.
Figure 6. Treatment Algorithm*

* This algorithm applies only to the assessment for overweight and obesity and subsequent decisions based on that assessment. It does not include any initial overall assessment for cardiovascular risk factors or diseases that are indicated.
Each step (designated by a box) in this process is reviewed in this section and expanded upon in subsequent sections.

**Box 1: “Patient Encounter”**
A patient encounter is defined as any interaction between a health care practitioner (generally a physician, nurse practitioner or physician’s assistant) that provides the opportunity to assess a patient’s weight status and provide advice, counseling, or treatment.

**Box 2: “History of Overweight or Recorded BMI ≥ 25”**
The practitioner must seek to determine whether the patient has ever been overweight. While a technical definition is provided, a simple question such as “Have you ever been overweight?” will accomplish the same goal. Questions directed towards weight history, dietary habits, physical activities, and medications may provide useful information about the origins of obesity in particular patients.

**Box 3: “BMI Measured in Past 2 Years”**
For those who have not been overweight, a 2-year interval is appropriate for the reassessment of BMI. While this time span is not evidence-based, it is believed to be a reasonable compromise between the need to identify weight gain at an early stage and the need to limit the time, effort, and cost of repeated measurements.

**Box 4: “Measure Weight, Height, Waist Circumference; Calculate BMI”**
Weight must be measured so that the BMI can be calculated. Most charts are based on weights obtained with the patient wearing undergarments and no shoes. BMI can be manually calculated (kg/[height in meters]²), but is more easily obtained from a nomogram (see Appendix V). Waist circumference is important because evidence suggests that abdominal fat is a particularly strong determinant of cardiovascular risk in those with a BMI of 25 to 34.9 kg/m². Increased waist circumference can also be a marker of increased risk even in persons of normal weight. The technique for measuring waist circumference is described on page 58. A nutrition assessment will also help to assess the diet and physical activity habits of overweight patients.

**Box 5: “BMI ≥ 25, OR Waist Circumference > 88 cm(F) or > 102 cm(M)”**
These cutpoints divide overweight from normal weight and are consistent with other national and international guidelines. The relation between weight and mortality is J-shaped, and evidence suggests that the right side of the “J” begins to rise at a BMI of 25. Waist circumference is incorporated as an “or” factor because some patients with BMI lower than 25 will have disproportionate abdominal fat, and this increases their cardiovascular risk despite their low BMI (see page 61). These abdominal circumference values are not necessary for patients with a BMI ≥ 35 kg/m².

**Box 6: “Assess Risk Factors”**
Risk assessment for CVD and diabetes in a person with evident obesity will include special considerations for the history, physical examination, and laboratory examination. Of greatest urgency is the need to detect existing CVD or end-organ damage. Since the major risk of obesity is indirect (obesity elicits or aggravates hypertension, dyslipidemias, and diabetes, which cause cardiovascular complications), the management of obesity should be implemented in the context of these other risk factors. While there is no direct evidence demonstrating that addressing risk factors increases weight loss, treating the risk factors through weight loss is a recommended strategy. The risk factors that should be considered are provided on pages 63-65. With regard to age, please see commentary on pages 90-91.
Box 7: “BMI $\geq 30$, OR ([BMI 25 to 29.9 OR Waist Circumference $> 88$ cm(F) or $> 102$ cm(M)] AND $\geq 2$ risk factors)"

The panel recommends that all patients meeting these criteria attempt to lose weight. However, it is important to ask the patient whether or not they want to lose weight. Those with BMIs between 25 and 29.9 kg/m² who have one or no risk factors should work on maintaining their current weight rather than embark on a weight reduction program. The panel recognizes that the decision to lose weight must be made in the context of other risk factors (e.g., quitting smoking is more important than losing weight) and patient preferences.

Box 8: “Clinician and Patient Devise Goals”

The decision to lose weight must be made jointly between the clinician and patient. Patient involvement and investment is crucial to success. The patient may choose not to lose weight but rather to prevent further weight gain as a goal. The panel recommends as an initial goal the loss of 10 percent of baseline weight, to be lost at a rate of 1 to 2 lb/week, establishing an energy deficit of 500 to 1,000 kcal/day. (See pages 71-72.) For individuals who are overweight, a deficit or 300 to 500 kcal/day may be more appropriate, providing a weight loss of about 1/2 lb/week. Also, there is evidence that an average of 8 percent of weight can be lost in a 6-month period. Since the observed average 8 percent weight loss includes people who do not lose weight, an individual goal of 10 percent is reasonable. After 6 months, most patients will equilibrate (caloric intake balancing energy expenditure) and will require adjustment of energy balance if they are to lose more weight. (See pages 72-73.)

The three major components of weight loss therapy are dietary therapy, increased physical activity, and behavior therapy. (See pages 73-82.) Lifestyle therapy should be tried for at least six months before considering pharmacotherapy. In addition, pharmacotherapy should be considered as an adjunct to lifestyle therapy in patients with a BMI $\geq 30$ with no concomitant obesity-related risk factors or diseases, or for patients with a BMI $\geq 27$ with concomitant obesity-related risk factors or diseases. The risk factors or diseases considered important enough to warrant pharmacotherapy at a BMI of 27 to 29.9 are hypertension, dyslipidemia, CHD, type 2 diabetes, and sleep apnea. However, sibutramine, the only FDA approved drug for long-term use, should not be used in patients with a history of hypertension, CHD, congestive heart failure, arrhythmias, or history of stroke. Certain patients may be candidates for weight loss surgery. Each component of weight loss therapy can be introduced briefly. The selection of weight loss methods should be made in the context of patient preferences, analysis of past failed attempts, and consideration of the available resources.

Box 9: “Progress Being Made/Goal Achieved”

During the acute weight loss period and at 6-month and 1-year follow-up visits, the patients should be weighed, BMI calculated, and progress assessed. If at any time it appears that the program is failing, a reassessment should take place to determine the reasons (see Box 10). If pharmacotherapy is being used, appropriate monitoring for side effects is recommended (See page 86). If a patient can achieve the recommended 10 percent reduction in body weight in 6 months to 1 year, this change in weight can be considered good progress. The patient can then enter the phase of weight maintenance and long-term monitoring. It is important for the practitioner to recognize that some persons are more apt to lose or gain weight on a given regimen and that this phenomenon cannot always be attributed to degree of compliance. However, if significant obesity remains and absolute risk
from obesity-associated risk factors remains high, at some point an effort should be made to reinstitute weight loss therapy to achieve further weight reduction. Once a limit of weight loss has been obtained, the practitioner is responsible for long-term monitoring of risk factors and for encouraging the patient to maintain a reduced weight level.

**Box 10: “Assess Reasons for Failure to Lose Weight”**

If a patient fails to achieve the recommended 10 percent reduction in body weight in 6 months or 1 year, a reevaluation is required. A critical question is whether the level of motivation is high enough to continue clinical therapy. If motivation is high, revise the goals and strategies (see Box 8). If motivation is not high, clinical therapy should be discontinued, but the patient should be encouraged to embark on efforts to lose weight or to at least avoid further weight gain. Even if weight loss therapy is stopped, risk factor management must be continued.

Failure to achieve weight loss should prompt the practitioner to investigate energy intake (dietary recall including alcohol intake, daily intake logs), energy expenditure (physical activity diary), attendance at behavior therapy group meetings, recent negative life events, family and societal pressures, or evidence of detrimental psychiatric problems (depression, binge eating disorder). If attempts to lose weight have failed, and the BMI is $\geq 40$, surgical therapy should be considered.

**Box 11: “Maintenance Counseling”**

Evidence suggests that over 80 percent of persons who lose weight will gradually regain it (see page 72). Patients who continue on weight maintenance programs have a greater chance of keeping weight off. Maintenance consists of continued contact with the health care practitioner for continued education, support, and medical monitoring (see page 72 and 75).

**Box 12: “Does the Patient Want to Lose Weight?”**

All patients who are overweight (BMI 25 to 29.9), or do not have a high waist circumference, and have few (0 to 1) cardiovascular risk factors and do not want to lose weight, should be counseled regarding the need to keep their weight at or below its present level. Patients who wish to lose weight should be guided per Boxes 8 and 9. The justification for offering these overweight patients the option of maintaining (rather than losing) weight is that their health risk, while higher than that of persons with a BMI $< 25$, is only moderately increased (page 62).

**Box 13: “Advise to Maintain Weight/Address Other Risk Factors”**

Those who have a history of overweight and are now at appropriate weight, and those who are overweight and not obese but wish to focus on maintenance of their current weight, should be provided with counseling and advice so that their weight does not increase. An increase in weight increases their health risk and should be prevented. The physician should actively promote prevention strategies including enhanced attention by the patient to diet, physical activity, and behavior therapy. For addressing other risk factors, see Box 6, because even if weight loss cannot be addressed, other risk factors should be covered.

**Box 14: “History of BMI $\geq 25$”**

This box differentiates those who are not overweight now and never have been from those with a history of overweight; see Box 2.

**Box 15: “Brief Reinforcement”**

Those who are not overweight and never have been should be advised of the importance of staying in this category.

**Box 16: “Periodic Weight, BMI, and Waist Circumference Check”**

Patients should receive periodic monitoring of their weight, BMI, and waist circumference.
Patients who are not overweight or have no history of overweight should be screened for weight gain every 2 years. This time span is a reasonable compromise between the need to identify weight gain at an early stage and the need to limit the time, effort, and the cost of repeated measurements.

E Exclusion from Weight Loss Therapy
Patients in whom weight loss therapy is not appropriate include most pregnant or lactating women, those with serious psychiatric illness, and patients who have a variety of serious illnesses in whom caloric restriction might exacerbate the illness.

F Patient Motivation
Assessment of patient motivation is a prerequisite for weight loss therapy. Weight reduction in the clinical setting represents a major investment of time and effort on the part of the health care team and expense to the patient. For these reasons, motivation for weight loss should be relatively high before initiating clinical therapy. At the same time, it is the duty of the primary care practitioner to heighten a patient’s motivation for weight loss when such is perceived to be of significant benefit for risk reduction. This can be done by enumerating the dangers associated with persistent obesity and by describing the strategy for clinically assisted weight reduction. For patients who are not motivated (or able) to enter clinical weight loss therapy, appropriate management of risk factors (e.g., high serum cholesterol, hypertension, smoking, and type 2 diabetes) is still necessary. Sustained weight reduction may facilitate control of cardiovascular risk factors and delay the onset of type 2 diabetes.

Evidence Statement: Patient motivation is a key component for success in a weight loss program. Evidence Category D.

Rationale: Assessment of the patient’s motivation for treatment by the practitioner is important in the decision to initiate a weight loss program. The following factors must be evaluated:

- Reasons and motivation for weight loss—What is the extent of the patient’s seriousness and readiness to undergo a sustained period of weight loss at this time? What is the patient’s current attitude about making a lifelong commitment to behavior change?
- Previous history of successful and unsuccessful weight loss attempts—What factors were responsible for previous failures and successes at weight loss or maintenance of normal body weight?
- Family, friends, and work-site support—What is the social framework in which the patient will attempt to lose weight, and who are the possible helpers and antagonists to such an attempt?
- The patient’s understanding of overweight and obesity and how it contributes to obesity-associated diseases—Does the patient have an appreciation of the dangers of obesity, and are these dangers of significant concern to the patient?
- Attitude toward physical activity—Is the patient motivated to enter a program of increased physical activity to assist in weight reduction?
- Time availability—Is the patient willing to commit the time required to interact with health professionals in long-term weight loss therapy?
- Barriers—What are the obstacles that will interfere with the patient’s ability to implement the suggestions for change?
- Financial considerations—Is the patient willing to pay for obesity therapy? This may include having to pay for travel to the med-
ical facility, time lost from work, and paying for professional counseling that is not covered by insurance.

One of the most important aspects of the initial evaluation is to prepare patients for treatment. Reviewing patients’ past attempts at weight loss and explaining how the new treatment plan will be different can encourage patients and provide hope for successful weight loss. It is helpful to discuss the proposed course of treatment and describe necessary behaviors, such as keeping diaries of food intake and physical activity.

Finally, given the social stigmatization that obese patients often feel, even from health care professionals, the initial evaluation is an opportunity to show the patient respect, concern, and hope. A patient who has shared feelings about being overweight and previous attempts to lose weight with a sympathetic listener may be more willing to consider new ideas and information. A partnership in which the patient feels supported and understood can help to sustain the necessary motivation for the difficult task of weight loss and maintenance.

RECOMMENDATION: Practitioners need to assess the patient’s motivation to enter weight loss therapy; assess the readiness of the patient to implement the plan; and then take appropriate steps to motivate the patient for treatment. Evidence Category D.

GOALS OF WEIGHT LOSS AND MANAGEMENT

The general goals of weight loss and management are: (1) to reduce body weight; and (2) to maintain a lower body weight over the long term; or (3) at a minimum, to prevent further weight gain. Specific targets for each of these goals can be considered.

1. Weight Loss

1.a. Target levels for weight loss—The initial target goal of weight loss therapy for overweight patients is to decrease body weight by about 10 percent. If this target can be achieved, consideration can be given to the next step of further weight loss.

Evidence Statement: Overweight and obese patients in well-designed programs can achieve a weight loss of as much as 10 percent of baseline weight, a weight loss that can be maintained for a sustained period of time (1 year or longer). Evidence Category A.

Rationale: The rationale for this initial goal is that even moderate weight loss, i.e., 10 percent of initial body weight, can significantly decrease the severity of obesity-associated risk factors. It can also set the stage for further weight loss, if indicated. Available evidence indicates that an average weight loss of 8 percent can be achieved in 6 months; however, since the observed average 8 percent includes people who do not lose weight, an individual goal of 10 percent is reasonable. This degree of weight loss can be achieved and is realistic, and moderate weight loss can be maintained over time. It is better to maintain a moderate weight loss over a prolonged period than to regain from a marked weight loss. The latter is counterproductive in terms of time, costs, and self-esteem. Patients generally will wish to lose more weight than 10 percent, and will need to be counseled and persuaded of the appropriateness of this initial goal. Further weight loss can be considered after this initial goal is achieved and maintained for 6 months.

RECOMMENDATION: The initial goal of weight loss therapy should be to reduce body weight by approximately 10 percent.
from baseline. With success, further weight loss can be attempted, if indicated through further assessment. Evidence Category A.

### 1.b. Rate of weight loss

A reasonable time line for weight loss is to achieve a 10 percent reduction in body weight over 6 months of therapy. For overweight patients with BMIs in the typical range of 27 to 35, a decrease of 300 to 500 kcal/day will result in weight losses of about ½ to 1 lb/week and a 10 percent weight loss in 6 months. For more severely obese patients with BMIs ≥ 35, deficits of up to 500 to 1,000 kcal/day will lead to weight losses of about 1 to 2 lb/week and a 10 percent weight loss in 6 months.

**Evidence Statement:** Weight loss at the rate of 1 to 2 lb/week (calorie deficit of 500 to 1,000 kcal/day) commonly occurs for up to 6 months, at which point weight loss begins to plateau unless a more restrictive regimen is implemented. Evidence Category B.

**Rationale:** To achieve significant weight loss, an energy deficit must be created and maintained. Weight can be lost at a rate of 1 to 2 lb/week with a calorie deficit of 500 to 1,000 kcal/day. After 6 months, this caloric deficit theoretically should result in a loss of 26 to 52 lb. However, the average amount of weight lost actually observed over this time period usually is in the range of 20 to 25 lb. A greater rate of weight loss does not yield a better result at the end of 1 year.\(^{437}\) It is difficult for most patients to continue to lose weight after a period of 6 months due to changes in resting metabolic rates and difficulty in adhering to treatment strategies, although some can do so. To continue to lose weight, diet and physical activity goals need to be revised to create an energy deficit at the lower weight, since energy requirements decrease as weight is decreased. To achieve additional weight loss, the patient must further decrease calories and/or increase physical activity. Many studies show that rapid weight reduction almost always is followed by regaining of weight. Moreover, with rapid weight reduction, there is an increased risk for gallstones and, possibly, electrolyte abnormalities.

**RECOMMENDATION:** Weight loss should be about 1 to 2 lb/week for a period of 6 months with the subsequent strategy based on the amount of weight lost. Evidence Category B.

### 2. Weight Maintenance at Lower Weight

Once the goals of weight loss have been successfully achieved, maintenance of a lower body weight becomes a major challenge. In the past, obtaining the goal of weight loss has been considered the end of weight loss therapy. Unfortunately, once patients are dismissed from clinical therapy, they frequently regain the lost weight. This report recommends that observation, monitoring, and encouragement of patients who have successfully lost weight be continued on a long-term basis.

**Evidence Statement:** After 6 months of weight loss treatment, efforts to maintain weight loss through diet, physical activity, and behavior therapy are important. Evidence Category B.

**Rationale:** After 6 months of weight loss, the rate of weight loss usually declines and plateaus.\(^ {395, 507, 555}\) The primary care practitioner and patient should recognize that at this point, weight
maintenance, the second phase of the weight loss effort, should take priority. Successful weight maintenance is defined as a weight regain of < 3 kg (6.6 lb) in 2 years and a sustained reduction in waist circumference of at least 4 cm. If a patient wishes to lose more weight after a period of weight maintenance, the procedure for weight loss outlined above can be repeated.

**RECOMMENDATION:** A weight maintenance program should be a priority after the initial 6 months of weight loss therapy. Evidence Category B.

**Evidence Statement:** Lost weight usually will be regained unless a weight maintenance program consisting of dietary therapy, physical activity, and behavior therapy is continued indefinitely. Drug therapy can also be used; however, drug safety and efficacy beyond 1 year of total treatment have not been established. Evidence Category B.

**Rationale:** After a patient has achieved the goals of weight loss, the combined modalities of therapy (dietary therapy, physical activity, and behavior therapy) must be continued indefinitely; otherwise, excess weight likely will be regained.

Numerous strategies are available for motivating the patient; all of these require that the practitioner continue to communicate frequently with the patient. Long-term monitoring and encouragement can be accomplished in several ways: by regular clinic visits, at group meetings, or via telephone or E-mail. The longer the weight maintenance phase can be sustained, the better the prospects for long-term success in weight reduction. Drug therapy may also be helpful during the weight maintenance phase.

**RECOMMENDATION:** After successful weight loss, the likelihood of weight loss maintenance is enhanced by a program consisting of dietary therapy, physical activity, and behavior therapy, which should be continued indefinitely. Drug therapy can also be used. However, drug safety and efficacy beyond 1 year of total treatment have not been established. Evidence Category B.

3. Prevention of Further Weight Gain

Some patients may not be able to achieve significant weight reduction. In such patients, an important goal is to prevent further weight gain that would exacerbate disease risk. Thus, prevention of further weight gain may justify entering a patient into weight loss therapy. Prevention of further weight gain can be considered a partial therapeutic success for many patients. Moreover, if further weight gain can be prevented, this achievement may be an important first step toward beginning the weight loss process. Primary care practitioners ought to recognize the importance of this goal for those patients who are not able to immediately lose weight. The need to prevent weight gain may warrant maintaining patients in a weight management program for an extended period.

**Strategies for Weight Loss and Weight Maintenance**

1. **Dietary Therapy**

In the majority of overweight and obese patients, adjustment of the diet to reduce caloric intake will be required. Dietary therapy consists, in large part, of instructing patients on how to modify their diets to achieve a decrease in caloric intake. A key element of the current recommendation is the use of a moderate reduction in caloric intake to achieve a slow but progressive weight loss. Ideally, caloric intake should be
reduced only to the level required to maintain weight at the desired level. If this level of caloric intake is achieved, excess weight will gradually disappear. In practice, somewhat greater caloric deficits are used in the period of active weight loss, but diets with very low calories are to be avoided. Finally the composition of the diet should be modified to minimize other cardiovascular risk factors. 142

The centerpiece of dietary therapy for weight loss in overweight patients is a low-calorie diet (LCD) (800 to 1,500 kcal/day). This diet is to be distinguished from a very low-calorie diet (VLCD) (250 to 800 kcal/day), which has been unsuccessful in achieving weight loss over the long term. The LCD recommended in this report also contains nutrient compositions that will decrease other risk factors, notably, high serum cholesterol and hypertension.

**Evidence Statement:** LCDs can reduce total body weight by an average of 8 percent and help reduce abdominal fat content over a period of approximately 6 months. Evidence Category A.

**Rationale:** A decrease in caloric intake is the most important dietary component of weight loss and maintenance. LCDs have been shown to reduce total body weight by an average of 8 percent over a period of 6 months, accompanied by significant reductions in waist circumference. Since this represents an average that includes individuals who did not lose weight, an individual average goal of 10 percent is feasible. When weight loss occurs, the loss consists of about 75 percent fat and 25 percent lean tissue. 556, 557 A deficit of 500 to 1,000 kcal/day will produce a weight loss of 70 to 140 grams/day, or 490 to 980 grams/week (1 to 2 lb/week). A deficit of 300 to 500 kcal/day will produce a weight loss of 40 to 70 grams/day, or 280 to 490 grams/week (1/2 to 1 lb/week). A patient may choose a diet of 1,000 to 1,200 kcal for women and 1,200 to 1,500 kcal for men.

VLCDs (less than 800 kcal/day) are not recommended for weight loss therapy because the deficits are too great, and nutritional inadequacies will occur unless VLCDs are supplemented with vitamins and minerals. 558 Moreover, clinical trials show that LCDs are just as effective as VLCDs in producing weight loss after 1 year. 437 Although more weight is initially lost with VLCDs, more is usually regained. Further, rapid weight reduction does not allow for gradual acquisition of changes in eating behavior. Successful behavior therapy is the key to long-term maintenance of weight at a reduced level. Finally, patients using VLCDs are at increased risk for developing gallstones.

Successful weight reduction by LCDs is more likely to occur when consideration is given to a patient’s food preferences in tailoring a particular diet. Care should be taken to be sure that all of the recommended dietary allowances are met; this may require use of a dietary supplement. Dietary education is a necessary ingredient in achieving adjustment to an LCD. Educational efforts should pay particular attention to the following topics:

- energy value of different foods;
- food composition—fats, carbohydrates (including dietary fiber), and proteins;
- reading nutrition labels to determine caloric content and food composition;
- new habits of purchasing—preference to low-calorie foods;
- food preparation—avoiding adding high-calorie ingredients during cooking (e.g., fats and oils);
- avoiding overconsumption of high-calorie foods (both high-fat and high-carbohydrate foods);
- maintain adequate water intake
- reducing portion sizes; and
- limiting alcohol consumption.

The Step I Diet in ATP II provides an appropriate nutrient composition for an LCD diet. The composition of the diet is presented in Table IV-3. Additional practical dietary advice for patients is included in Appendix VI.

**Evidence Statement:** During dietary therapy, frequent contacts between professional counselors and patients promote weight loss and maintenance. Evidence Category C.

**Rationale:** Frequent clinical encounters during the initial 6 months of weight reduction appear to facilitate reaching the goals of therapy. During the period of active weight loss, regular visits of at least once per month and preferably more often with a health professional for the purposes of reinforcement, encouragement, and monitoring will facilitate weight reduction. Weekly group meetings can be conducted at a low cost, and can contribute to favorable behavior changes. However, no clinical trials have been specifically designed to test the relative efficacy of different frequencies of encounters with physicians, dietitians, or others in the weight loss team.

**Evidence Statement:** The amount of time spent with the patient favorably affects weight change in overweight or obese adults given dietary therapy. Evidence Category D.

**Rationale:** Training of a health professional in techniques of weight reduction, especially in behavior therapy and dietary principles, is expected to facilitate weight reduction. Further, adequate time must be made available to the patient to convey the information necessary, to reinforce behavioral and dietary messages, and to monitor the patient’s response. Despite these judgments, none of the studies reviewed were designed to specifically address the type or qualifications of the health professional who implemented the various weight loss approaches. Many of the studies differed in the types of
Chapter 4: Treatment Guidelines

Nutrient Recommended Intake

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nutrient</th>
<th>Recommended Intake</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Calories(^1)</td>
<td>Approximately 500 to 1,000 kcal/day reduction from usual intake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Fat(^2)</td>
<td>30 percent or less of total calories</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saturated Fatty Acids(^3)</td>
<td>8 to 10 percent of total calories</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monounsaturated Fatty Acids</td>
<td>Up to 15 percent of total calories</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polyunsaturated Fatty Acids</td>
<td>Up to 10 percent of total calories</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cholesterol(^3)</td>
<td>&lt; 300 mg/day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protein(^4)</td>
<td>Approximately 15 percent of total calories</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbohydrate(^5)</td>
<td>55 percent or more of total calories</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sodium Chloride</td>
<td>No more than 100 mmol per day (approximately 2.4 g of sodium or approximately 6 g of sodium chloride)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calcium(^6)</td>
<td>1,000 to 1,500 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fiber(^5)</td>
<td>20 to 30 g</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. A reduction in calories of 500 to 1,000 kcal/day will help achieve a weight loss of 1 to 2 lbs/week. Alcohol provides unneeded calories and displaces more nutritious foods. Alcohol consumption not only increases the number of calories in a diet but has been associated with obesity in epidemiological studies\(^559-562\) as well as in experimental studies\(^563-566\). The impact of alcohol calories on a person's overall caloric intake needs to be assessed and appropriately controlled.

2. Fat-modified foods may provide a helpful strategy for lowering total fat intake but will only be effective if they are also low in calories and if there is no compensation of calories from other foods.

3. Patients with high blood cholesterol levels may need to use the Step II diet to achieve further reductions in LDL-cholesterol levels; in the Step II diet, saturated fats are reduced to less than 7 percent of total calories, and cholesterol levels to less than 200 mg/day. All of the other nutrients are the same as in Step I.

4. Protein should be derived from plant sources and lean sources of animal protein.

5. Complex carbohydrates from different vegetables, fruits, and whole grains are good sources of vitamins, minerals, and fiber. A diet rich in soluble fiber, including oat bran, legumes, barley, and most fruits and vegetables may be effective in reducing blood cholesterol levels. A diet high in all types of fiber may also aid in weight management by promoting satiety at lower levels of calorie and fat intake. Some authorities recommend 20 to 30 grams of fiber daily, with an upper limit of 35 grams\(^546, 567, 568\).

6. During weight loss, attention should be given to maintaining an adequate intake of vitamins and minerals. Maintenance of the recommended calcium intakes of 1,000 to 1,500 mg/day is especially important for women who may be at risk of osteoporosis\(^569\).
dietary intervention provided. Most programs involved dietitians and nutritionists as primary therapists and used group therapy rather than individual sessions. The length of time spent during each session and the nature of the practitioner/patient interaction tended not to be provided.

**RECOMMENDATION:** The literature suggests that weight loss and weight maintenance therapies that provide a greater frequency of contacts between the patient and the practitioner and are provided over the long term should be put in place. This can lead to more successful weight loss and weight maintenance. Evidence Category C.

### 2. Physical Activity

An increase in physical activity is an important component of weight loss therapy since it leads to increased expenditure of energy. Increased physical activity may also inhibit food intake in overweight patients. Physical activity can also be helpful in maintaining a desirable weight. In addition, sustained physical activity has the benefit of reducing overall CHD risk beyond that produced by weight reduction alone.

Several experts believe that a progressive decrease in the amount of energy expended for work, transportation, and personal chores is a major cause of obesity in the United States. These authorities note that total caloric intake has not increased over the last few decades; instead, the caloric imbalance leading to overweight and obesity is the result of a substantial decrease in physical activity and, consequently, a decrease in daily energy expenditure. However, this hypothesis is difficult to prove because appropriate data are lacking. Successful restoration of normal weight in many overweight and obese persons requires a higher level of energy expenditure.

Increased regular physical activity is the way to achieve this goal of augmenting daily energy expenditure.

**Evidence Statement:** Physical activity contributes to weight loss, both alone and when it is combined with dietary therapy. Evidence Category A.

**Rationale:** Increased physical activity alone can create a caloric deficit and can contribute to weight loss. However, efforts to achieve weight loss through physical activity alone generally produce an average of a 2 to 3 percent decrease in body weight or BMI. Even so, increased physical activity is a useful adjunct to LCDs in promoting weight reduction.

**Evidence Statement:** Physical activity in overweight and obese adults increases cardiorespiratory fitness independent of weight loss. Evidence Category A.

**Rationale:** There is strong evidence that increased physical activity increases cardiorespiratory fitness, with or without weight loss. Improved cardiovascular fitness also improves the quality of life in overweight patients by improving mood, self-esteem, and physical function in daily activities.

**Evidence Statement:** Physical activity independently reduces CVD risk factors (Evidence Category A), and reduces risk for cardiovascular disease. Evidence Category C.
**Rationale:** There is considerable evidence that physical inactivity is an independent risk factor for CVD and diabetes. Furthermore, the more active an individual is, the lower the risk. By the same token, increased physical activity appears to independently reduce risk for CVD morbidity and mortality, and diabetes. Physical activity reduces elevated levels of CVD risk factors, including blood pressure and triglycerides, increases HDL-cholesterol, and improves glucose tolerance with or without weight loss.

**Evidence Statement:** Physical activity contributes to a decrease in body fat, including a modest effect on abdominal fat. Evidence Category B.

**Rationale:** Physical activity appears to have a favorable effect on distribution of body fat. Several large cross-sectional studies in Europe, Canada, and the United States showed an inverse association between energy expenditure through physical activity and several indicators of body fat distribution, such as WHR and waist-to-thigh circumference ratio. Fewer data are available on the effects of physical activity on waist circumference, although the ratio changes noted above suggest a decrease in abdominal obesity. Only a few randomized controlled trials that have tested the effect of physical activity on weight loss measured waist circumference. In some (but not all) studies, physical activity was found to produce only modest weight loss and decreased waist circumference. However, it is not known whether the effects of physical activity on abdominal fat are independent of weight loss.

**2.a. Strategies to increase physical activity**

Many people live sedentary lives, have little training or skills in physical activity, and are difficult to motivate toward increasing their activity.

For these reasons, starting a physical activity regimen may require supervision for some people. The need to avoid injury during physical activity is high. Extremely obese persons may need to start with simple exercises that can gradually be intensified. The practitioner must decide whether exercise testing for cardiopulmonary disease is needed before embarking on a new physical activity regimen. This decision should be based on a patient’s age, symptoms, and concomitant risk factors.

For most obese patients, physical activity should be initiated slowly, and the intensity should be increased gradually. Initial activities may be walking or swimming at a slow pace. With time, depending on progress, the amount of weight lost, and functional capacity, the patient may engage in more strenuous activities. Some of these include fitness walking, cycling, rowing, cross-country skiing, aerobic dancing, and rope jumping. Jogging provides a high-intensity aerobic exercise, but can lead to orthopedic injury. If jogging is desired, the patient’s ability to do this must first be assessed. The availability of a safe environment for the jogger is also a necessity. Competitive sports, such as tennis and volleyball, can provide an enjoyable form of physical activity for many, but again, care must be taken to avoid injury, especially in older people. As the examples listed in Table IV-4 show, a moderate amount of physical activity can be achieved in a variety of ways. People can select activities that they enjoy and that fit into their daily lives. Because amounts of activity are functions of duration, intensity, and frequency, the same amounts of activity can be obtained in longer sessions of moderately intense activities (such as brisk walking) as in shorter sessions of more strenuous activities (such as running).

A regimen of daily walking is an attractive form of physical activity for many people, particularly those who are overweight or obese. The patient...
can start by walking 10 minutes, 3 days a week, and can build to 30 to 45 minutes of more intense walking at least 5 days a week and preferably most, if not all, days. With this regimen, an additional 100 to 200 calories per day of physical activity can be expended. Caloric expenditure will vary depending on the individual's body weight and intensity of the activity (see Table IV-5).

This regimen can be adapted to other forms of physical activity, but walking is particularly attractive because of its safety and accessibility.

---

**Examples of Moderate Amounts of Activity***

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activity</th>
<th>Less Vigorous, More Time **</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Washing and waxing a car for 45-60 minutes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Washing windows or floors for 45-60 minutes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Playing volleyball for 45 minutes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Playing touch football for 30-45 minutes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gardening for 30-45 minutes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wheeling self in wheelchair for 30-40 minutes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Walking 1½ miles in 35 minutes (20 min/mile)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basketball (shooting baskets) for 30 minutes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bicycling 5 miles in 30 minutes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dancing fast (social) for 30 minutes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pushing a stroller 1½ miles in 30 minutes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Raking leaves for 30 minutes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Walking 2 miles in 30 minutes (15 min/mile)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water aerobics for 30 minutes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swimming laps for 20 minutes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wheelchair basketball for 20 minutes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basketball (playing a game) for 15-20 minutes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bicycling 4 miles in 15 minutes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jumping rope for 15 minutes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Running 1½ miles in 15 minutes (10 min/mile)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shoveling snow for 15 minutes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stairwalking for 15 minutes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

* A moderate amount of physical activity is roughly equivalent to physical activity that uses approximately 150 calories of energy per day, or 1,000 calories per week.

** Some activities can be performed at various intensities; the suggested durations correspond to expected intensity of effort.
With time, a larger weekly volume of physical activity can be performed that would normally cause a greater weight loss if it were not compensated by a higher caloric intake.

Reducing sedentary time is another approach to increasing activity. Patients should be encouraged to build physical activities into each day. Examples include leaving public transportation one stop before the usual one, parking further than usual from work or shopping, and walking up stairs instead of taking elevators or escalators. New forms of physical activity should be suggested, e.g., gardening, walking a dog daily, or new athletic activities. Engaging in physical activity can be facilitated by identifying a safe area to perform the activity, e.g., community parks, gyms, pools, and health clubs. However, when these sites are not available, an area of the home can be identified and perhaps outfitted with equipment such as a stationary bicycle or a treadmill.

Health professionals should encourage patients to plan and schedule physical activity 1 week in advance, budget the time necessary to do it, and document their physical activity by keeping a diary and recording the duration and intensity of exercise.

**RECOMMENDATION:** Physical activity should be an integral part of weight loss therapy and weight maintenance. Evidence Category A. Initially, moderate levels of physical activity for 30 to 45 minutes, 3 to 5 days per week should be encouraged. All adults should set a long-term goal to accu-

### TABLE IV-5:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Intensity</th>
<th>Activity</th>
<th>Approximate duration in minutes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>Volleyball, noncompetitive</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>Walking, moderate pace (3mph, 20 min/mile)</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>Walking, brisk pace (4mph, 15 min/mile)</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>Table tennis</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>Raking leaves</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>Social dancing</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>Lawn mowing (powered push mower)</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hard</td>
<td>Jogging (5 mph, 12 min/mile)</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hard</td>
<td>Field hockey</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Very Hard</td>
<td>Running (6 mph, 10 min/mile)</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Surgeon General's Report on Physical Activity and Health
mulate at least 30 minutes or more of
moderate-intensity physical activity on
most, and preferably all, days of the week.
Evidence Category B.

3. Behavior Therapy
Behavioral strategies to reinforce changes in diet
and physical activity can produce a weight loss
in obese adults in the range of 10 percent of
baseline weight over 4 months to 1 year. Unless
a patient acquires a new set of eating and physi-
cal activity habits, long-term weight reduction is
unlikely to succeed. The acquisition of new
habits is particularly important for long-term
weight maintenance at a lower weight. Most
patients return to baseline weights in the absence
of continued intervention. Thus, the physician
or staff members must become familiar with
techniques for modifying life habits of over-
weight or obese patients.

The goal of behavior therapy is to alter the eat-
ing and activity habits of an obese patient.
Techniques for behavior therapy have been
developed to assist patients in modifying their
life habits.

Evidence Statement: Behavior therapy,
in combination with an energy deficit,
provides additional benefits in assisting
patients to lose weight short-term (1 year).
Its effectiveness for long-term weight main-
tenance has not been shown in the absence
of continued behavioral intervention.
Evidence Category B.

Rationale: The primary assumptions of behavior
therapy are that:

- patterns of eating and physical activity are
  learned behaviors and can be modified; and
- to change these patterns over the long term,
  the environment must be changed.

Behavior therapies provide methods for over-
coming barriers to compliance with dietary ther-
apy and/or increased physical activity, and are
thus important components of weight loss ther-
apy. Most weight loss programs incorporating
behavioral strategies do so as a package that
includes education about nutrition and physical
activity. However, this standard “package” of
management should not ignore the need for
individualizing behavioral strategies. 579

3.a. Behavior Therapy Strategies Used in
Weight Loss and Weight Maintenance
Programs
Studies reviewed for this report examined a
range of modalities of behavioral therapy. No
single method or combination of behavioral
methods proved to be clearly superior. Thus,
various strategies can be used by the practitioner
to modify patient behavior. The aim is to change
eating and physical activities behaviors over the
long term. Such change can be achieved either
on an individual basis or in group settings.
Group therapy has the advantage of lower cost.
Specific behavioral strategies include the follow-
ing:

- Self-monitoring of both eating habits and
  physical activity—Objectifying one’s own
  behavior through observation and recording is
  a key step in behavior therapy. Patients should
  be taught to record the amount and types of
  food they eat, the caloric values, and nutrient
  composition. Keeping a record of the fre-
  quency, intensity, and type of physical activity
  likewise will add insight to personal behavior.
  Extending records to time, place, and feelings
  related to eating and physical activity will
  help to bring previously unrecognized behav-
  ior to light. 580
Chapter 4: Treatment Guidelines

- **Stress management**—Stress can trigger dysfunctional eating patterns, and stress management can defuse situations leading to overeating. Coping strategies, meditation, and relaxation techniques all have been successfully employed to reduce stress.

- **Stimulus control**—Identifying stimuli that may encourage incidental eating enables individuals to limit their exposure to high-risk situations. Examples of stimulus control strategies include learning to shop carefully for healthy foods, keeping high-calorie foods out of the house, limiting the times and places of eating, and consciously avoiding situations in which overeating occurs. 580

- **Problem solving**—This term refers to the self-correction of problem areas related to eating and physical activity. Approaches to problem solving include identifying weight-related problems, generating or brainstorming possible solutions and choosing one, planning and implementing the healthier alternative, and evaluating the outcome of possible changes in behavior. 580 Patients should be encouraged to reevaluate setbacks in behavior and to ask “What did I learn from this attempt?” rather than punishing themselves.

- **Contingency management**—Behavior can be changed by use of rewards for specific actions, such as increasing time spent walking or reducing consumption of specific foods. 44 Verbal as well as tangible rewards can be useful, particularly for adults. Rewards can come from either the professional team or from the patients themselves. For example, self-rewards can be monetary or social and should be encouraged.

- **Cognitive restructuring**—Unrealistic goals and inaccurate beliefs about weight loss and body image need to be modified to help change self-defeating thoughts and feelings that undermine weight loss efforts. Rational responses designed to replace negative thoughts are encouraged. 580 For example, the thought, “I blew my diet this morning by eating that doughnut; I may as well eat what I like for the rest of the day,” could be replaced by a more adaptive thought, such as, “Well, I ate the doughnut this morning, but I can still eat in a healthy manner at lunch and dinner.”

- **Social support**—A strong system of social support can facilitate weight reduction. Family members, friends, or colleagues can assist an individual in maintaining motivation and providing positive reinforcement. Some patients may benefit by entering a weight reduction support group. Overweight patients should be asked about (possibly) overweight children and family weight control strategies. Parents and children should work together to engage in and maintain healthy dietary and physical activity habits.

3.b. Treatment of Obese Individuals with Binge Eating Disorder

If a patient suffers from binge eating disorder (BED), consideration can be given to referring the patient to a health professional who specializes in BED treatment. Behavioral approaches to BED associated with obesity have been derived from cognitive behavior therapy (CBT) used to treat bulimia nervosa. 327 Among the techniques are self-monitoring of eating patterns, encouraging regular patterns of eating (three meals a day plus planned snacks), cognitive restructuring, and relapse prevention strategies. 581

**RECOMMENDATION:** Behavior therapy strategies to promote diet and physical activity should be used routinely, as they are helpful in achieving weight loss and weight maintenance. Evidence Category B.
4. Combined Therapy
To achieve the greatest likelihood of success from weight loss therapy, the combination of dietary therapy with an LCD, increased physical activity, and behavior therapy will be required. Inclusion of behavior therapy and increased physical activity in a weight loss regimen will provide the best opportunity for weight loss, and hopefully for long-term weight control. In order to achieve weight loss, such a regimen should be maintained for at least 6 months before considering pharmacotherapy.

Evidence Statement: Combined intervention of an LCD, increased physical activity, and behavior therapy provides the most successful therapy for weight loss and weight maintenance. Evidence Category A.

Rationale: Clinical trials have demonstrated that combining behavior therapy, LCDs, and increased physical activity provides better outcomes for long-term weight reduction than programs that use only one or two of these modalities. A lower-fat diet markedly improves the potential of physical activity to achieve a negative energy balance. In addition, lower-fat diets that are also low in saturated fats reduce serum cholesterol levels, which would reduce CVD risk. It is difficult to achieve a negative energy balance and weight loss with physical activity of moderate duration and intensity in individuals who consume a high-fat diet and alcohol.

RECOMMENDATION: Weight loss and weight maintenance therapy should employ the combination of LCDs, increased physical activity, and behavior therapy. Evidence Category A.

5. Pharmacotherapy
Drug therapy has undergone radical changes in the last 2 years. With the publication of the trials with phentermine and fenfluramine by Weintraub in 1992 (210 weeks), drug therapy began to change from short-term to long-term use. Both dexfenfluramine and fenfluramine alone, as well as the combination of phentermine/fenfluramine, were used long term. However, concerns about recently reported unacceptable side effects, such as valvular lesions of the heart causing significant insufficiency of the valves, have led to the withdrawal of the drugs dexfenfluramine and fenfluramine from the market in September 1997. No drugs remained that were approved by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) for use longer than 3 months. In November 1997, the FDA approved a new drug, sibutramine, for use in obesity and is in the process of evaluating orlistat for long-term use.

Evidence Statement: Appropriate weight loss drugs can augment diet, physical activity, and behavior therapy in weight loss. Evidence Category B.

Rationale: The purpose of weight loss and weight maintenance is to reduce health risks. If weight is regained, health risks increase once more. The majority of persons who lose weight regain it, so the challenge to the patient and the practitioner is to maintain the weight loss. Because of the tendency to regain weight after weight loss, the use of long-term medication to aid in the treatment of obesity may be indicated in carefully selected patients.

The drugs used to promote weight loss have been anorexiants or appetite suppressants. Three classes of anorexiant drugs have been developed, all of which affect neurotransmitters in the
brain: those that affect catecholamines, those that affect serotonin, and those that affect both. They work by increasing the secretion of dopamine, norepinephrine, or serotonin into the synaptic neural cleft, or by inhibiting the reuptake of these neurotransmitters back into the neuron, or by both mechanisms. The new agent sibutramine has norepinephrine and serotonin effects. Another new agent, orlistat, has a different mechanism of action, the blockage of fat absorption. Very few trials longer than 6 months have been done with any drug. The ones tested for at least 1 year that received FDA approval for long-term use are shown in Table IV-6.

These drugs are effective but modest in their ability to produce weight loss. Net weight loss attributable to drugs generally has been reported to be in the range of 2 to 10 kg (4.4 to 22 lb), although some patients lose significantly more weight. It is not possible to predict how much weight an individual may lose. Most of the weight loss usually occurs in the first 6 months of therapy.

Adverse effects include primary pulmonary hypertension with fenfluramine and dexfenfluramine, 395, 586, 587 valvular heart disease with dexfenfluramine and fenfluramine, 588 and increases in blood pressure and pulse with sibutramine. 510 With orlistat, there is a possible decrease in the absorption of fat-soluble vitamins; overcoming this may require vitamin supplementation. People with a history of high blood pressure, CHD, congestive heart failure, arrhythmias, or history of stroke should not take sibutramine, and all patients taking the medication should have their blood pressure monitored on a regular basis. Depression has been described with the serotonergic drugs but it is generally not clinically significant. Neurotoxic effects with neuronal atrophy have been described with high doses of dexfenfluramine in rats and primates, but not in humans. 588

### TABLE IV-6:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Adverse Effects</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dexfenfluramine*</td>
<td>serotonin reuptake inhibitor</td>
<td>valvular heart disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fenfluramine*</td>
<td>serotonin releaser</td>
<td>primary pulmonary hypertension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sibutramine</td>
<td>norepinephrine, dopamine, and serotonin reuptake inhibitor</td>
<td>increase in heart rate and blood pressure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>orlistat±</td>
<td>inhibits pancreatic lipase, decreases fat absorption</td>
<td>decrease in absorption of fat-soluble vitamins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>soft stools and anal leakage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>possible link to breast cancer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

+ Ephedrine and caffeine, and, fluoxetine have also been tested for weight loss, but are not approved for use in the treatment of obesity. Mazindol, phentermine, benzphetamine, and phendimetrazine are approved for only short-term use for the treatment of obesity.

* FDA approval withdrawn

± FDA approval pending
appetite suppressant drugs during pregnancy is unknown.

**Evidence Statement:** Weight loss drugs approved by the FDA for long-term use may be useful as an adjunct to diet and physical activity for patients with a BMI of ≥ 30 with no concomitant obesity-related risk factors or diseases, and for patients with a BMI of ≥ 27 with concomitant obesity-related risk factors or diseases. *Evidence Category B.*

**Rationale:** If after at least 6 months on a weight loss regimen of an LCD, increased physical activity, and behavior therapy, the patient has not lost the recommended 1 lb/week, careful consideration may be given to pharmacotherapy. There are few long-term studies evaluating the safety or effectiveness of many currently approved weight loss medications. At present, sibutramine is available for long-term use. (Note: FDA approval for orlistat is pending a resolution of labeling issues and results of Phase III trials.) Their risk/benefit ratio is such that they can be recommended for use with the degree of obesity outlined above. Weight loss medications should be used only by patients who are at increased medical risk because of their weight and should not be used for “cosmetic” weight loss. The risk factors and diseases considered serious enough to warrant pharmacotherapy at BMI of 27 to 29.9 are hypertension, dyslipidemia, CHD, type 2 diabetes, and sleep apnea.

Not every patient responds to drug therapy. Tests with weight loss drugs have shown that initial responders tend to continue to respond, while initial nonresponders are less likely to respond even with an increase in dosage. If a patient does not lose 2 kg (4.4 lb) in the first 4 weeks after initiating therapy, the likelihood of long-term response is very low. This finding may be used as a guide to treatment, either continuing medication in the responders or stopping it in the nonresponders. If weight is lost in the initial 6 months of therapy or is maintained after the initial weight loss phase, this should be considered a success, and the drug may be continued. It is important to remember that the major role of medications should be to help patients stay on a diet and physical activity plan while losing weight. Medication cannot be expected to continue to be effective in weight loss or weight maintenance once it has been stopped. The use of the drug may be continued as long as it is effective and the adverse effects are manageable and not serious. There are no indications for specifying how long a weight loss drug should be continued. Therefore, an initial trial period of several weeks with a given drug or combination of drugs may help determine their efficacy in a given patient. If a patient does not respond to a drug with reasonable weight loss, the physician should reassess the patient to determine adherence to the medication regimen and adjunctive therapies, or consider the need for dosage adjustment. If the patient continues to be unresponsive to the medication, or serious adverse effects occur, the physician should consider its discontinuation.

**Evidence Statement:** Adverse side effects from the use of weight loss drugs have been observed in patients. *Evidence Category A.*

**Rationale:** The potential for side effects from the use of weight loss drugs is of great concern. Adverse effects with sibutramine include increased blood pressure and tachycardia. With orlistat there are oily and loose stools and some fat-soluble vitamin malabsorption. Thus, a multivitamin supplement is recom-
mended. Side effects are generally mild and may improve with continued use, although their persistence may result in discontinuation of the drug.

There is a great interest in weight loss drugs among consumers. Because of the possibility of serious adverse effects, it is incumbent on the practitioner to use drug therapy with caution. Practitioners should be sure that patients are not taking drugs that have been withdrawn from the market for safety reasons, and herbal medications are not recommended as part of a weight loss program. These preparations have unpredictable amounts of active ingredients and unpredictable and potentially harmful effects. In those patients with a lower level of obesity risk, nonpharmacological therapy is the treatment of choice. It is important for the physician to monitor both the effectiveness and the side effects of the drug.

Evidence Statement: Using weight loss drugs singly (not in combination) and starting with the lowest effective doses can decrease the likelihood of adverse effects. Evidence Category C.

Rationale: Given the fact that adverse events may increase in association with combination drug therapy, it seems wise that, until further safety data are available, using weight loss drugs singly would be more prudent. Some patients will respond to lower doses, so that full dosage is not always necessary. The short-term use of drugs (< 3 months) has not generally been found to be effective.

Drugs should be used only as part of a comprehensive program that includes behavior therapy, diet, and physical activity. Appropriate monitoring for side effects must be continued while drugs are part of the regimen. Patients will need to return for followup in 2 to 4 weeks, then monthly for 3 months, and then every 3 months for the first year after starting the medication. After the first year, the doctor will advise the patient on appropriate return visits. The purposes of these visits are to monitor weight, blood pressure, and pulse, discuss side effects, conduct laboratory tests, and answer questions.

Since obesity is a chronic disorder, the short-term use of drugs is not helpful. The health professional should include drugs only in the context of a long-term treatment strategy. The risk/benefit ratio cannot be predicted at this time, since not enough long-term data (> 1 year) are available on any of the available drugs.

6. Surgery for Weight Loss
Surgery is one option for weight reduction for some patients with severe and resistant obesity. The aim of surgery is to modify the gastrointestinal tract to reduce net food intake. Most authorities agree that weight loss surgery should be reserved for patients with severe obesity, in whom efforts at other therapy have failed, and
who are suffering from the complications of obesity.

Considerable progress has been made in developing safer and more effective surgical procedures for promoting weight loss. Surgical interventions commonly used include gastroplasty, gastric partitioning, and gastric bypass. These procedures are designed primarily to reduce food consumption. They have replaced previous procedures that were designed to promote malabsorption of nutrients. The latter procedures were fraught with side effects that made their use impractical or dangerous.

**Evidence Statement:** Gastrointestinal surgery (gastric restriction [vertical gastric banding] or gastric bypass [Roux-en Y]) can result in substantial weight loss, and therefore is an available weight loss option for well-informed and motivated patients with a BMI $\geq 40$ or $\geq 35$, who have comorbid conditions and acceptable operative risks. Evidence Category B.

**Rationale:** According to the National Institutes of Health’s Consensus Development Conference on Gastrointestinal Surgery for Severe Obesity, the risk for morbidity and mortality accompanying obesity increases with the degree of overweight. Thus, treatment of clinically severe obesity involves an effort to create a caloric deficit sufficient to result in weight loss and reduction of weight-associated risk factors or comorbidities. Surgical approaches can result in substantial weight loss, i.e., from 50 kg (110 lb) to as much as 100 kg (220 lb) over a period of 6 months to 1 year. A major limitation of nonsurgical approaches is the failure to maintain reduced body weight in many individuals.

Surgical procedures in current use (gastric restriction [vertical gastric banding] and gastric bypass [Roux-en Y]) can induce substantial weight loss, and serve to reduce weight-associated risk factors and comorbidities. Compared to other interventions available, surgery has produced the longest period of sustained weight loss. Assessing both perioperative risk and long-term complications is important and requires assessing the risk/benefit ratio in each case. Patients whose BMI equals or exceeds 40 kg/m$^2$ are potential candidates for surgery if they strongly desire substantial weight loss, because obesity severely impairs the quality of their lives. Less severe obese patients (BMIs between 35 and 39.9 kg/m$^2$) also may be considered for surgery. This group primarily includes those patients with high-risk comorbid conditions (cardiovascular, sleep apnea, uncontrolled type 2 diabetes) or weight-induced physical problems interfering with performance of daily life activities.

A recent retrospective study of severely overweight patients with noninsulin-dependent diabetes, who were referred for consideration of a gastric bypass procedure, allowed for a comparison of those who opted for the surgical procedure versus those who did not undergo the procedure because of personal preference or refusal of insurance payment. Patients undergoing the surgical procedure had a decrease in mortality rate for each year of follow up. This latter observation provides initial documentation of the significant impact that reduction in weight may have on mortality.

Most of the surgery studies primarily included women of childbearing age. Caution should be exercised in selecting candidates for surgery to treat obesity, as pregnancy demands increase nutritional needs and a normal need for weight gain. Women with reproductive potential should be advised to avoid pregnancy until their weight has stabilized postoperatively and potential micronutrient deficiencies have been identified and treated.
Of special note is that many of the studies reported to date have not had population samples representative of the general severely overweight population with respect to race, ethnicity, cultural or socioeconomic background, or gender.

**Evidence Statement:** Patients opting for surgical intervention should be followed by a multidisciplinary team (medical, behavioral, and nutritional). Evidence Category D.

**Rationale:** As for all other interventions for obesity, an integrated program should be in place that will provide guidance concerning the necessary dietary regimen, appropriate physical activity, and behavioral and social support both prior to and after the surgical procedure.

**Evidence Statement:** Lifelong medical surveillance after surgical therapy is a necessity. Evidence Category C.

**Rationale:** Since surgical procedures result in some loss of absorptive function, the long-term consequences of potential nutrient deficiencies must be recognized and adequate monitoring must be performed, particularly with regard to vitamin B<sub>12</sub>, folate, and iron. Some patients may develop other gastrointestinal symptoms such as “dumping syndrome” or gallstones. Occasionally, patients may have postoperative mood changes or their presurgical depression symptoms may not be improved by the achieved weight loss. Thus, surveillance should include monitoring of indices of inadequate nutrition and modification of any preoperative disorders. Table IV-7 illustrates some of the complications that can occur following gastric bypass surgery.

### TABLE IV-7:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gastric Bypass Surgery Complications: 14-Year Follow Up</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin B&lt;sub&gt;12&lt;/sub&gt; deficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Readmit for various reasons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incisional hernia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Depression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Staple line failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gastritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cholecystitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anastomotic problems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dehydration, malnutrition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dilated pouch</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Data derived from source (Pories WJ<sup>595</sup>) and modified based on personal communication.
**RECOMMENDATION:** Weight loss surgery is an option for carefully selected patients with clinically severe obesity (BMI ≥ 40 or ≥ 35 with comorbid conditions) when less invasive methods of weight loss have failed and the patient is at high risk for obesity-associated morbidity or mortality. Evidence Category B.

**COMMENTARY: Adapting Weight Loss Programs To Meet the Needs of Diverse Patient Populations.**

Standard obesity treatment approaches should be tailored to the needs of patients. It is, however, difficult to determine from the literature how often this occurs and whether it makes weight loss programs more effective. Very few published reports of such adapted programs can be identified, particularly when a distinction is made from reports that include or focus on special populations but do not report any particular steps taken to modify the intervention for these populations. In addition, it is impossible to compare directly the amount of weight lost using specially adapted programs with that achieved when more standard approaches are used. Studies reporting these programs are sometimes pilot studies or descriptive reports that do not meet the standards of evidence set forth elsewhere in these guidelines. Where randomized controlled trials or quasi-experiments are available, they usually do not include an internal comparison with a program involving no adaptations. Appendix III illustrates the types of adaptations that have been reported.

Large individual variation exists within any social or cultural group; furthermore, there is substantial overlap among subcultures within the larger society. There is, therefore, no “cookbook” or standardized set of rules to optimize weight reduction with a given type of patient. A theoretical and qualitative analysis of cultural appropriateness in obesity treatment programs has been conducted, and it provides some guidance for incorporating patient character-

- Adapt the setting and staffing to the patient population. The setting should:
  - be physically accessible to the patient;
  - have features likely to be familiar to the patient;
  - be free of negative psychosocial connotations;
  - be devoid of aspects that create a large social distance among patients or between patient and practitioner; and
  - promote active patient participation and high patient self-esteem and self-efficacy.

- List assumptions about the type of patient for whom the program will be best suited and evaluate the extent to which these assumptions are appropriate for prospective patients. Where appropriate, modify the program to avoid the need for certain assumptions. Consider patients:
  - preexisting knowledge base;
  - day-to-day routine;
  - discretionary time;
Chapter 4: Treatment Guidelines

- financial resources and living situation;
- cultural preferences for types of food and activity.

For example, redesign printed materials to be suitable for patients with low literacy skills or poor vision. Offer dietary and physical activity recommendations that will be feasible for low-income patients living in inner-city areas with limited access to supermarkets or with high crime rates.

- Consider how the obesity treatment program fits in other aspects of the health care and self-care of the patient(s), and integrate other aspects where appropriate. For example, for those patients with diabetes, information about weight reduction should be aligned with other diabetes management advice.

- Expect and allow for program modifications based on patient feedback and preferences. Program appropriateness can be increased when patients can express their needs and preferences, and the program is then adapted to those needs and preferences. This is especially applicable when practitioners have limited common experience with patients.

In recent years, a fat acceptance, nondieting advocacy group has developed. This has emerged from concerns about weight cycling and its possible adverse effects on morbidity and mortality. However, recent evidence suggests that intentional weight loss is not associated with increased morbidity and mortality. For this reason, the guidelines have been made explicit on the importance of intervention for weight loss and maintenance in the appropriate patient groups.

COMMENTARY: Weight Reduction After Age 65—What Are the Issues?

- Are the indications for treating obesity in older adults the same as those for younger adults?
- Does weight loss reduce risk factors in older adults?
- Does weight reduction prolong the lives of older adults?
- Are there risks associated with obesity treatment that are unique to older adults?

The higher prevalence of cardiovascular risk factors in overweight versus nonoverweight persons is clearly observed at older ages. In addition, obesity is a major predictor of functional limitations and mobility impairments in older adults. Both observational data and applicable randomized controlled trials cited in these guidelines suggest that weight loss reduces risk factors and improves functional status in older persons in the same manner as in younger adults.

The question of whether weight reduction leads to increased survival among older adults has been raised because of observations that weight reduction after age 60 or 65 years may be unable to reverse the deleterious effects of longstanding obesity. Also, weight loss at older ages has been associated with increased mortality. Some of the association of weight loss with higher mortality may be due to the increased frequency at older ages of involuntary weight loss due to identified or occult illness. In any case, the association of weight loss with higher mortality applies most clearly to individuals who enter old age with a BMI in the lower part of the range. It is not clear that it applies to overweight older persons with CVD risk factors. This issue has been difficult to clarify in observational data, but there are no randomized trials in which the effects of obesity treatment on mortality can be directly assessed, at any age.

The wisdom or importance of treating obesity at older ages has also been questioned because of epidemiological observations suggesting a decreased significance of obesity-related relative risks at older ages (see chapter 2.3.b.). However, these relative-risk data are not a useful reference point for considering whether obese older persons will benefit.
Relative risks are influenced by the characteristics of the comparison group. In this case, the comparison group is lower-weight older persons who have also had high morbidity and mortality.

Concerns about potential adverse effects of obesity treatment in older adults have been raised with respect to bone health and to dietary adequacy. Weight reduction may accelerate aging-related bone loss and thereby increase the risk of osteoporotic fractures in high-risk groups such as older white women. This concern is more relevant to weight loss in thin persons than in obese persons. Some evidence suggests that including resistance training and moderate weight-bearing exercise as a part of a weight reduction program may help maintain bone integrity.

The general nutritional safety of weight reduction at older ages is of interest because restrictions on overall food intake due to dieting could result in inadequate intakes of protein or essential vitamins and minerals. In addition, involuntary weight loss indicative of occult disease might be mistaken for success in voluntary weight reduction. These concerns can be alleviated by providing proper nutritional counseling and regular body weight monitoring for older persons for whom weight reduction is prescribed.

**Evidence Statement:** Age alone should not preclude treatment for obesity in adult men and women. Evidence Category D.

**Rationale:** There is little evidence at present to indicate that obesity treatment should be withheld from adult men and women on the basis of age alone up to 80 years of age.

**RECOMMENDATION:** A clinical decision to forego obesity treatment in an older adult should be guided by an evaluation of the potential benefits of weight reduction for day-to-day functioning and reduction of the risk of future cardiovascular events, as well as the patient’s motivation for weight reduction. Care must be taken to ensure that any weight reduction program minimizes the likelihood of adverse effects on bone health or other aspects of nutritional status. Evidence Category D.

### Smoking Cessation in the Overweight or Obese Patient

Cigarette smoking is a major risk factor for cardiopulmonary disease. Because of its attendant high risk, smoking cessation is a major goal of risk-factor management. This aim is especially important in the overweight or obese patient, who usually carries excess risk from obesity-associated risk factors. Thus, smoking cessation in such patients becomes a high priority for risk reduction.

**Evidence Statement:** Smoking and obesity together increase cardiovascular risk, but fear of weight gain upon smoking cessation is an obstacle for many patients who smoke. Evidence Category C.

**Rationale:** Both smoking and obesity are accompanied by increased risks for cardiovascular disease. Many well-documented health benefits are associated with smoking cessation, but a major obstacle to successful smoking cessation has been the attendant weight gain observed in about 80 percent of quitters. This weight gain averages 4.5 to 7 lb, but in 13 percent of women and 10 percent of men, weight gains in excess of 28 lb have been noted among quitters. Weight gain is an important barrier to smoking cessation, particularly in women.
Weight gain that accompanies smoking cessation so far has been relatively resistant to most dietary, behavioral, or physical activity interventions. Postcessation weight gain has been associated with a reduction in energy expenditure of up to 100 kcal/day, accounting for approximately one-third of the weight gain after smoking cessation. The reduction in energy expenditure appears to be the result of a decrease in the resting metabolic rate. In general, no differences in the level of physical activity have been observed after smoking cessation. About two-thirds of the weight gain after smoking cessation appears to result from increased caloric intake. However, dietary counseling programs combined with smoking cessation programs have not been very successful. There are several products that reduce postcessation weight gain during drug administration, including nicotine replacement therapy, phenylpropanolamine, and bupropion. No matter what the drug, however, it appears that these drugs merely delay rather than prevent postcessation weight gain. That is, while providing weight gain suppression during drug administration, subjects on these drugs experience a rebound of weight gain once they go off the products and long-term weight gain is equal to that in those not receiving these drugs.

The weight gained with smoking cessation is less likely to produce negative health consequences than would continued smoking. For this reason, smoking cessation should be strongly reinforced in persons regardless of their baseline weight. Smoking is not an acceptable weight control therapy, although it seems to be used for this purpose by a great many people. Overweight patients, as well as all others, should be counseled to quit smoking. For practical reasons, it may be prudent to avoid initiating smoking cessation and weight loss therapy simultaneously. Prevention of weight gain through diet and physical activity should be stressed. If weight gain ensues after smoking cessation, it should be managed vigorously according to the guidelines outlined in this report. Although short-term weight gain is a common side effect of smoking cessation, this gain does not rule out the possibility of long-term weight control. There are no clinical trials to test whether ex-smokers are less likely to successfully achieve long-term weight reduction than those who never smoked.

**Recommendation:** All smokers, regardless of their weight status, should quit smoking. Evidence Category A. Prevention of weight gain should be encouraged and if weight gain does occur, it should be treated through dietary therapy, physical activity, and behavior therapy, maintaining the primary emphasis on the abstinence from smoking. Evidence Category C.

**Role of Health Professionals in Weight Loss Therapy**

**Evidence Statement:** A number of health professionals can play an important role in a weight loss and management program. Evidence Category B.

**Rationale:** Various randomized controlled trials were reviewed that highlighted the role of the nutritionists, exercise physiologists and physical education instructors, nurses, and psychologists in providing assessment, treatment, and follow up during weight loss. As a result, it is suggested that the health professionals avail themselves of the various disciplines that offer expertise in dietary counseling, physical activity, and behavior change. The relationship between the physician and these disciplines can be a direct,
formal one or a more indirect referral. It is important to emphasize that a positive attitude of support and encouragement from all professionals is crucial to continuing success. 

**RECOMMENDATION:** A weight loss and maintenance program can be conducted by a practitioner without specialization in weight loss so long as that person has the requisite interest and knowledge. However, various health professionals with different expertise are available and helpful to a practitioner who would like assistance. Evidence Category B.
**Advantages of Weight Loss**

- Weight loss is recommended to lower elevated blood pressure in overweight and obese persons with high blood pressure. Evidence Category A.

- Weight loss is recommended to lower elevated levels of total cholesterol, low-density lipoprotein cholesterol, and triglycerides and to raise low levels of high-density lipoprotein cholesterol in overweight and obese persons with dyslipidemia. Evidence Category A.

- Weight loss is recommended to lower elevated blood glucose levels in overweight and obese persons with type 2 diabetes. Evidence Category A.

**Measurement of Degree of Overweight and Obesity**

- Practitioners should use the body mass index (BMI) to assess overweight and obesity. Body weight alone can be used to follow weight loss, and to determine efficacy of therapy. Evidence Category C.

- The BMI should be used to classify overweight and obesity and to estimate relative risk for disease compared to normal weight. Evidence Category C.

- The waist circumference should be used to assess abdominal fat content. Evidence Category C.

- For adult patients with a BMI of 25 to 34.9 kg/m², sex-specific waist circumference cutoffs should be used in conjunction with BMI to identify increased disease risks. Evidence Category C.

**Goals for Weight Loss**

- The initial goal of weight loss therapy should be to reduce body weight by approximately 10 percent from baseline. With success, further weight loss can be attempted, if indicated, through further assessment. Evidence Category A.

- Weight loss should be about 1 to 2 lb/week for a period of 6 months, with the subsequent strategy based on the amount of weight lost. Evidence Category B.

**How to Achieve Weight Loss**

1. **Dietary Therapy**

   - Low-calorie diets are recommended for weight loss in overweight and obese persons. Evidence Category A. Reducing fat as part of a low-caloric diet is a practical way to reduce calories. Evidence Category A.

   - Reducing dietary fat alone without reducing calories is not sufficient for weight loss. However, reducing dietary fat, along with reducing dietary carbohydrates, can facilitate caloric reduction. Evidence Category A.

   - A diet that is individually planned to help create a deficit of 500 to 1,000 kcal/day should be an integral part of any program aimed at achieving a weight loss of 1 to 2 lb/week. Evidence Category A.

2. **Physical Activity**

   - Physical activity is recommended as part of a comprehensive weight loss therapy and weight maintenance program because it: (1) modestly contributes to weight loss in overweight and
obese adults (Evidence Category A), (2) may decrease abdominal fat (Evidence Category B), (3) increases cardiorespiratory fitness (Evidence Category A), and (4) may help with maintenance of weight loss (Evidence Category C).

- Physical activity should be an integral part of weight loss therapy and weight maintenance. Evidence Category A. Initially, moderate levels of physical activity for 30 to 45 minutes, 3 to 5 days per week should be encouraged. All adults should set a long-term goal to accumulate at least 30 minutes or more of moderate-intensity physical activity on most, and preferably all, days of the week. Evidence Category B.

- The combination of a reduced calorie diet and increased physical activity is recommended since it produces weight loss, decreases abdominal fat, and increases cardiorespiratory fitness. Evidence Category B.

3. Behavior Therapy

- Behavior therapy is a useful adjunct when incorporated into treatment for weight loss and weight maintenance. Evidence Category B.

- Practitioners need to assess the patient’s motivation to enter weight loss therapy; assess the readiness of the patient to implement the plan and then take appropriate steps to motivate the patient for treatment. Evidence Category D.

- Behavior therapy strategies to promote diet and physical activity should be used routinely, as they are helpful in achieving weight loss and weight maintenance. Evidence Category B.

4. Combined Therapy

- Weight loss and weight maintenance therapy should employ the combination of low-calorie diets, increased physical activity, and behavior therapy. Evidence Category A.

5. Pharmacotherapy

- Weight loss drugs approved by the FDA may be used as part of a comprehensive weight loss program including diet and physical activity for patients with a BMI of ≥ 30 with no concomitant obesity-related risk factors or diseases, and for patients with a BMI of ≥ 27 with concomitant obesity-related risk factors or diseases. Drugs should never be used without concomitant lifestyle modification. Continual assessment of drug therapy for efficacy and safety is necessary. If the drug is efficacious in helping the patient lose and/or maintain weight loss and there are no serious adverse effects, it can be continued. If not, it should be discontinued. Evidence Category B.

6. Weight Loss Surgery

- Weight loss surgery is an option in carefully selected patients with clinically severe obesity (BMI ≥ 40 or ≥ 35 with comorbid conditions) when less invasive methods of weight loss have failed and the patient is at high risk for obesity-associated morbidity or mortality. Evidence Category B.

E Goals for Weight Loss Maintenance

- After successful weight loss, the likelihood of weight loss maintenance is enhanced by a program consisting of dietary therapy, physical activity, and behavior therapy, which should be continued indefinitely. Drug therapy can also be used. However, drug safety and efficacy beyond 1 year of total treatment have not been established. Evidence Category B.

- A weight maintenance program should be a priority after the initial 6 months of weight loss therapy. Evidence Category B.
**How to Maintain Weight Loss**

- The literature suggests that weight loss and weight maintenance therapies that provide a greater frequency of contacts between the patient and the practitioner and are provided over the long term should be put in place. This can lead to more successful weight loss and weight maintenance. Evidence Category C.

- A weight loss and maintenance program can be conducted by a practitioner without specialization in weight loss so long as that person has the requisite interest and knowledge. However, various health professionals with different expertise are available and helpful to a practitioner who would like assistance. Evidence Category B.

**Special Treatment Groups**

- All smokers, regardless of their weight status, should quit smoking. Evidence Category A. Prevention of weight gain should be encouraged and if weight gain does occur, it should be treated through diet, physical activity, and behavior therapy, maintaining the primary emphasis on the abstinence from smoking. Evidence Category C.

- A clinical decision to forego obesity treatment in older adults should be guided by an evaluation of the potential benefits of weight reduction for day-to-day functioning and reduction of the risk of future cardiovascular events, as well as the patient’s motivation for weight reduction. Care must be taken to ensure that any weight reduction program minimizes the likelihood of adverse effects on bone health or other aspects of nutritional status. Evidence Category D.

- The possibility that a standard approach to weight loss will work differently in diverse patient populations must be considered when setting expectations about treatment outcomes. Evidence Category B.
Obesity is a heterogeneous chronic disorder that has many causes, although the fundamental basis is an imbalance between energy intake and energy expenditure. Future research needs to examine the most effective ways to treat and prevent obesity, the causes of obesity and their mechanisms, the influence of fat distribution on health risk, and the development of better methods for assessing energy intake and energy expenditure.

**INTERVENTION APPROACHES**

Considerable research is needed on intervention approaches to treat and prevent obesity. Increased research on behavioral theory specifically addressing obesity treatment and prevention for all individuals, including children and adolescents, needs to be conducted. Intervention methods to prevent weight gain with smoking cessation are of particularly high priority in helping achieve smoking cessation.

More research is needed on behavioral intervention methods conducted in various settings, particularly the primary care setting. Effective programs to treat or prevent obesity in culturally, ethnically, and socioeconomically diverse populations need to be developed and tested. Simple screening tools should be tested for their predictive value in achieving lifestyle modifications that lead to weight loss or weight control practices. Research is needed on identifying appropriate and successful intervention content; for example, magnitude of weight loss goals (smaller changes versus larger changes), and goals for the rate of weight loss (1 lb versus 2 lb per week; initial weight loss goal of 5 percent of body weight and, subsequently, an additional 5 percent versus a single initial goal of 10 percent at the outset). Of particular importance is research on the optimal amount of physical activity to promote weight loss, the maintenance of weight loss, and the prevention of obesity. Also important are strategies which preserve muscle and bone in the face of weight loss. More research is needed on identifying the characteristics of individuals who have successfully maintained their weight loss over the long term.

Research on surgical interventions for weight loss should include evaluating surgical risk, including not only complications, morbidity, and mortality, but also long-term postoperative surveillance to monitor vitamin and mineral nutritional adequacy. Evaluation of the health benefits of weight loss from surgery should include changes in fat distribution; cardiorespiratory fitness; obesity-related comorbidities, including blood pressure, blood lipids, and glucose tolerance; and degree of success in long-term weight loss maintenance. Finally, research is needed on techniques for integrating behavioral methods to promote long-term maintenance of weight loss after surgical treatment. Likewise, research on pharmacologic interventions for weight loss should include evaluating changes in fat distribution, cardiorespiratory fitness, obesity-related comorbidities, and the degree of success of long-term weight loss maintenance. Better methods for integrating behavioral methods, along with pharmacologic treatment, should also be investigated.
Finally, research is needed on environmental and population-based intervention methods, including community- and school-based interventions, to augment public health approaches toward promoting weight maintenance and preventing obesity in the general population.

**B Causes and Mechanisms of Overweight and Obesity**

The regulation of energy balance needs to be explored, including the neuroendocrine factors that control energy intake, energy expenditure, and the differentiation of adipose tissue resulting from excess calories. The genes that are important in human obesity need to be identified. These include those that alter eating and physical activity behaviors, those that affect thermogenesis, and those associated with the comorbidities of obesity. The roles of environmental and behavioral influences on metabolic factors important in obesity, as well as gene-environment interactions, need to be studied. Predictive factors should be examined to identify who is most at risk of developing obesity, and whether there are critical periods of life when these factors are most operative. In addition, the influence of the intrauterine environment on the development of obesity needs to be investigated, particularly to determine whether early deprivation leads to a later propensity for overweight and associated comorbidities, such as insulin resistance, or if high maternal weight gain and high birth weight are related to the risk of obesity and its comorbidities.

**C Abdominal Fat, Body Weight and Disease Risk**

The influence of abdominal fat independent of total body fat on health risk needs to be further defined. More information is needed on the relationship between differential body fat compartments and increased risk, the distribution of body fat compartments among various racial group populations, and the relationship between abdominal fat and disease risk in racial groups. Weight loss studies should include measurements of abdominal fat, as well as cardiorespiratory fitness, to better assess health improvement. Intentional weight loss treatments need to be examined in terms of their acute and chronic effect on the development and progression of diabetes, heart disease, and overall mortality. Large prospective studies are needed to examine the relationship of body mass index and body fat distribution to overall mortality.

**D Assessment Methods**

Much of the current research is hampered by the lack of good methods to accurately, objectively, and economically assess energy intake and expenditure, including physical activity, body composition and fat distribution, and behavioral and psychological variables. More research is therefore needed to focus on measures to assess intake of fat and other dietary components, levels of physical activity, energy metabolism, and body fat and visceral obesity. In addition, better methods for assessment of psychological, behavioral, and psychosocial variables that may be related to behavioral risk factors for obesity (such as poor diet and inactive lifestyle) are needed, and particularly so for special population segments based on race, ethnicity, and socioeconomic status. Methods for assessing culture, social integration, and psychological stress should also be developed.
APPENDICES

1 Appendix I.A.1. Guidelines Development Methodology

The panel has attempted to provide primary care practitioners with recommendations regarding effective strategies to evaluate and treat overweight and obesity in adults. The panel anticipates that the recommendations also will be followed by the large proprietary weight loss industry in the United States. The guideline is based on a systematic review of the scientific literature published in MEDLINE from January 1980 through September 1997. This was done in the interest of time and economy. This information was supplemented by material provided by the panel and a search of appropriate references in eligible articles. The panel identified randomized controlled trials as the strongest level of evidence for the evaluation of treatment efficacy. Thus, evidence from randomized controlled trials (RCTs) serves as the basis for many of the recommendations contained in this guideline. However, in some instances, the panel had to make recommendations in the absence of RCTs. Each evidence statement (other than those with no available evidence) and each recommendation is categorized by level of evidence (A through D) as described on page 108. Statements for which there is no available evidence are so indicated.

1.a. Panel Selection
The National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute (NHLBI) Obesity Education Initiative Task Force recommended panel members representing the various expertise required to deal with the issues of cardiovascular disease and body weight. The executive director of the American Academy of Family Physicians (AAFP) also provided recommendations for the primary care practitioner who would represent AAFP. The panel members include primary care practitioners, clinicians from academic medical centers, nutritionists, exercise physiologists, pulmonologists, cardiologists, psychologists, behaviorists, epidemiologists, and experts on cost issues. Some of the panel members were also members of the National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases (NIDDK) National Task Force on the Prevention and Treatment of Obesity. The funding source for the guidelines was primarily the NHLBI, with the cooperation of the NIDDK of the National Institutes of Health.

1.b. Topics Included in the Guidelines
The panel decided to focus on all adult (18 years of age and older) overweight and obese patients with a body mass index (BMI) ≥ 25, and particularly those with cardiovascular risk factors. Excluded from the analysis were patients with known genetic or hormonal syndromes and pharmacologically induced obesity.

In addition, since pediatric obesity contributes to about one-third of adult obesity, the panel felt that some attention needed to be focused on the issue of overweight in children and adolescents (see Appendix III). Treatment issues surrounding overweight children and adolescents are quite different from the treatment of adults. The panel recommended that this issue warrants its own project as soon as possible.
The therapeutic interventions requiring examination included diet, physical activity, behavior therapy, pharmacological therapy, surgery, and combinations of these. No clinical interventions were excluded at the outset. Because of the importance and complexity of the primary prevention of obesity, the panel decided not to deal with these concerns in detail and that the issue be addressed in a separate document. However, clinical interventions to prevent further weight gain in patients already overweight, or those patients not currently overweight at high risk for becoming overweight, were considered relevant therapeutic interventions. The guideline also contains some information on the cost of obesity.

In terms of reliable diagnostic measures, the panel decided to concentrate on useful tools readily available in a physician’s office, i.e., weight, height and BMI. The panel did not search for evidence to prove that measures of body composition or metabolic rate are useful tools; however, they did include studies using these diagnostic measures.

1.c. Development of the Evidence Model
The panel determined the evidence model used to develop the guidelines for the evaluation and treatment of obesity (Figure 7, and Figures 7a and 7b). The model contains two broad categories, the association of weight to cardiovascular and noncardiovascular mortality and morbidity in the population and the clinical issues related to the treatment of the overweight individual. The population portion of the model addresses such questions as, “Is there an association between weight and cardiovascular risk factors?” and “Is there an association between weight and cardiovascular and noncardiovascular morbidity and mortality?” The patient portion of the model focuses on the clinical setting and addresses such questions as, “Does a reduction in weight result in a decrease in cardiovascular morbidity and mortality?”

The model illustrates the areas requiring a thorough examination of the relevant scientific literature through data abstraction and evaluation (the hollow shaded arrows), the areas where the literature has been firmly established (the hollow arrows), and the areas requiring a consideration of the preexisting evidence for minority populations (the crosshatched arrows). The arrows in the model represent the questions the panel considered when looking at the evidence (see the Evidence Model questions on pages 110 to 111).

1.d. Search and Review of the Literature
The literature was searched and systematically reviewed by
- establishing a priori eligibility criteria for inclusion of studies;
- reviewing titles and abstracts to select promising articles;
- reviewing these full articles; and
- compiling evidence tables summarizing those articles that met the inclusion criteria.

The panel decided on the parameters for the literature search, particularly for the search dealing with the model linking treatment to weight loss. The parameters of the search included year of publication, country, language, study design, length of the study, outcome measures (which, what, and when), and patient characteristics (age and weight).

The panel decided to limit its search to English-language studies, but included foreign studies that provide an English abstract and are randomized controlled clinical trials. The search included human studies only published in MEDLINE from January 1980 to September 1997. No editorials, letters, or case reports were accepted. The panel was aware that two books published in the early 1980s coded the bulk of the obesity literature written to that point.
Figure 7
Evidence Model

Population

Weight
Abdominal Fat

8 (abd fat), 38 (wt)
7 (abd fat), 37 (wt)
1 3
2

Noncardiovascular Mortality and Morbidity
Cardiovascular Disease

9 (abd fat), 39 (wt)

High Blood Pressure
Dyslipidemia
Diabetes

34, 35, 36
5
6

10 18
17
19, 20, 21
22, 23, 24
25, 26, 27
28

11

Noncardiovascular Mortality and Morbidity
Cardiovascular Mortality and Morbidity

Overweight Individual

Assess
(↑ Kcal Out)
Treat
(↓ Kcal In)

↑ Kcal In
↑ Weight
↓ Abdominal Fat
↑ High Blood Pressure
↓ Dyslipidemia
↓ Glucose Intolerance
↑ Fitness

Note: All arrows were examined for heterogeneity across demographic factors (e.g., sex, age, ethnicity)
Figure 7a
Treatment Evidence Model

Overweight Individual

Noncardiovascular Mortality and Morbidity

Cardiovascular Mortality and Morbidity

Cardiovascular Disease

↑ Kcal Out

↓ High Blood Pressure

↓ Dyslipidemia

↓ Abdominal Fat

↓ Glucose Intolerance

↑ Weight

↑ Fitness

Assess

↑ Kcal In

Treatment Evidence Model

Note: All arrows were examined for heterogeneity across demographic factors (e.g., sex, age, ethnicity)
Figure 7b
Evidence Model
Association of Weight to Cardiovascular and Noncardiovascular Mortality and Morbidity

Population

Weight
Abdominal Fat

1
3
4
5
6
7 (abd fat), 37 (wt)
8 (abd fat), 38 (wt)
9 (abd fat), 39 (wt)
34, 35, 36
10 (abd fat), 39 (wt)

High Blood Pressure
Dyslipidemia
Diabetes

Noncardiovascular Mortality and Morbidity
Cardiovascular Mortality and Morbidity

Note: All arrows were examined for heterogeneity across demographic factors (e.g., sex, age, ethnicity)
Panel staff and librarians at the National Library of Medicine’s National Information Center for Health Services Research determined the medical subject heading terms used in the literature review. The number of citations found by topic area is provided in Appendix I.A.2.

Figure 8 illustrates the various steps used to collect the evidence. Of the 43,627 titles acquired from the MEDLINE search, 18,217 were duplicates, leaving 25,410 titles to be considered. Using the ProCite reference database, the 25,410 titles were screened by two reviewers and ultimately marked for their appropriateness. Abstracts for the appropriate 8,040 remaining titles were then screened for relevance in two rounds. Two individuals independently reviewed each abstract using the inclusion and exclusion criteria developed by the panel. A third reviewer would sporadically check the quality of the screening. This review led to 2,440 possibly relevant abstracts. Due to the greater quality of the evidence, the decision was made that randomized controlled trials pertinent to the treatment portion of the model be the top priority for data abstraction. Ultimately, 394 articles of randomized controlled trials were reviewed for data abstraction.

1.e. Literature Abstraction and Preparation of Evidence Tables
In order to abstract the correct data related to the treatment portion of the model in a consistent manner, a 25-page form called the “Critical Review Status Sheet (CRSS)” was developed. The CRSS was reviewed and approved by the panel. It took into account the inclusion and exclusion criteria described below and allowed for (1) the collection of data on the study’s purpose and design; (2) the intervention parameters, including the format, setting, practitioners, population demographics, and detailed descriptions of the intervention per se, be it dietary, physical activity, behavioral, pharmacotherapy, or other types of interventions (surgery, acupuncture, hypnosis, etc.); and (3) outcome measures, including the method of determining the outcome, and adverse events. The CRSS was pilot-tested by staff as well as by staff of the San Antonio Cochrane Center.

The San Antonio Cochrane Center is one of 12 centers around the world that comprise the Cochrane Collaboration. The Cochrane Collaboration is an international organization established in 1993 whose mission is to prepare, maintain, and disseminate systematic reviews and meta-analysis of health care interventions. The San Antonio Center provides advice on multiple aspects of systematic review, including searching and selecting materials, abstracting materials, organizing materials into evidence tables, and performing meta-analysis.

Inclusion and exclusion criteria—The appropriateness of an article was determined by applying criteria determined by the panel. These criteria included the time frame for the study, i.e., the minimum amount of time that must pass before the outcome measure is made; how body weight was reported; and the type and size of the study. In defining the time frame, the panel needed to clarify if the important outcome was weight loss or sustained weight loss. Due to the importance of both outcomes, the panel decided to include studies that considered the effects during the acute phase of weight loss, and those that examined effects during the maintenance phase. Both types of studies were deemed important, and two cutpoints were considered appropriate for follow-up. At a minimum, studies had to have a time frame from start to finish of at least 4 months. However, in order to consider the question of long-term maintenance, studies with outcome data provided at approximately 1 year or longer were examined. The panel decided to exclude studies that used only self-reported weights for their measurement. No exclusion of studies was made by study size.
Figure 8

Obesity Guideline Development Process
Evidence Collection Schema

Final Evidence Model defines ~ 39 relationships

NLM MEDLINE literature search assesses each relationship in Evidence Model

Procite reference database marked for duplicates (18,217 dupes)

NLM MEDLINE literature search merged into Procite reference database (43,627 records)

Print titles of Procite database (25,410 records) (Two rounds of screening)

19,596 records not relevant

Procite reference database marked for duplicates (18,217 dupes)

8,040 abstracts screened for relevance (Two rounds)

Expert Panel member literature search performed and merged into Procite database (2,226 abstracts)

2,440 abstracts marked as possibly relevant for article retrieval

5,600 abstracts not relevant

Critical review status sheet database and 394 articles (primarily RCTs) sent to the San Antonio Cochrane Center
Preparation of evidence tables—Of the 394 articles of randomized controlled trials considered for data abstraction by the San Antonio Cochrane Center, 158 were rejected for a variety of reasons; i.e., randomization was not adequate or subjects were not all overweight or obese. Ultimately, 236 articles were abstracted by two separate reviewers who independently read and abstracted each article according to the CRSS. The reviewers met, compared coding, and resolved discrepancies. The data were then compiled into individual evidence tables developed for each RCT. In addition, summary tables were developed to compile the evidence necessary to address the 23 questions relevant to the treatment portion of the model. All of the evidence tables will be available for online retrieval (see information regarding availability of the full obesity evidence report and other resources related to weight control on pages 165-167, and 226-228.

1.f. The Formulation of the Evidence into the Guidelines
In order to consider the evidence for each of the 23 questions, the panel met in groups of 6 to 10 members. During the first round of considering the evidence, 12 small groups of panel members were randomly assigned to consider the evidence for 2 or 3 questions. They developed evidence statements and determined the strength of the evidence using the criteria noted on page 108. Their recommendations were presented to the full panel, which then made additional recommendations regarding their conclusions.

After considering additional studies for questions where adequate RCTs were not available, another iteration of evidence statements and recommendations was developed. The full panel met again to consider this iteration, which was considered by small groups assigned to focus on either a specific treatment modality or outcome measure. The small groups brought their recommendations back to the full panel for their final consideration. The panel weighed the evidence based on a thorough examination of the threshold or magnitude of the treatment effect.

Criteria:
Each evidence statement (other than those with no available evidence) and each recommendation is categorized by a level of certainty (A through D) as described on the next page. The consensus process used for drawing conclusions and writing the recommendations was a group process that took into account all opinions. Conclusions reflect the widest possible agreement of the panel.

1.g. Consideration of Special Populations and Situations
The panel also evaluated population factors and clinical situations that might potentially influence the physiological, medical, behavioral, or sociocultural context for obesity identification and treatment. Evidence on special populations and situations was captured from non-RCT evidence when available, but in many cases such evidence was meager. Population factors selected for special consideration with respect to obesity classification and treatment were age, gender, race/ethnicity, socioeconomic status, pregnancy, eating disorders, sleep apnea, extreme obesity, concurrent treatment of other major conditions (such as heart disease or diabetes), and treatment of obesity in conjunction with smoking cessation.

These considerations were addressed in all stages of guideline development. Persons with relevant special expertise were invited to serve on the panel. The search for evidence was formulated to ascertain studies that include special populations. Studies evaluated were coded to permit analysis of the extent to which the special populations or situations of interest had been included and whether findings for these populations and situations deviated from those for the majority populations in these studies. In the numerous cases where evidence on these special populations and situations was limited or conflicting, the panel used the evidence as available to draw conclusions on the best course of action for individuals in these circumstances.
# Evidence Categories

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Evidence Category</th>
<th>Sources of Evidence</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Randomized controlled trials (rich body of data)</td>
<td>Evidence is from endpoints of well-designed RCTs (or trials that depart only minimally from randomization) that provide a consistent pattern of findings in the population for which the recommendation is made. Category A therefore requires substantial numbers of studies involving substantial numbers of participants.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Randomized controlled trials (limited body of data)</td>
<td>Evidence is from endpoints of intervention studies that include only a limited number of RCTs, post hoc or subgroup analysis of RCTs, or meta-analysis of RCTs. In general, Category B pertains when few randomized trials exist, they are small in size, and the trial results are somewhat inconsistent, or the trials were undertaken in a population that differs from the target population of the recommendation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Nonrandomized trials</td>
<td>Evidence is from outcomes of uncontrolled or nonrandomized trials or from observational studies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Observational studies</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Panel Consensus Judgment</td>
<td>Expert judgment is based on the panel's synthesis of evidence from experimental research described in the literature and/or derived from the consensus of panel members based on clinical experience or knowledge that does not meet the above-listed criteria. This category is used only in cases where the provision of some guidance was deemed valuable but an adequately compelling clinical literature addressing the subject of the recommendation was deemed insufficient to justify placement in one of the other categories (A through C).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
issues was insufficient to meet standards for inclusion in the main text of the guideline, potentially important issues were identified for the user and cross-referenced to an appendix or discussed in sidebar text.

1.h. External Review of the Guidelines
The external review of the guidelines included 115 reviewers from 59 government agencies, professional societies, and consumer groups represented on the Coordinating Committees of the National Cholesterol Education Program and the National High Blood Pressure Education Program, as well as the NIDDK’s National Task Force on the Prevention and Treatment of Obesity, and selected members of the North American Association for the Study of Obesity.

Reviewers were asked to evaluate the guideline based on five criteria: validity, clarity, flexibility, completeness, and clinical applicability. Reviewers were also encouraged to provide additional comments. Comments of the peer reviewers were evaluated by the panel and panel staff, and were incorporated into the guideline where appropriate.

1.i. Caveats to Recommendation Use
In applying these guideline recommendations, the reader should note some caveats:

- The emphasis of these guidelines was to identify effective interventions, not to rank-order interventions in terms of relative efficacy or effectiveness. The panel chose not to emphasize comparisons among interventions, because there were few studies that compared long-term outcomes, and, since patient preference often dictates choice of therapy, we wished to present a menu of options rather than a ranked list of choices.

- When no evidence was available on the efficacy of various treatments, the panel usually rendered no opinion. An absence of studies should not be confused with an absence of effect. While clinicians may wish to use proven therapies in preference to untested therapies, the lack of testing does not prove that the untested therapy does not work.

- The limitations of RCTs must be kept in mind. The RCT is the primary method for demonstrating efficacy. Often, patients enrolled in RCTs differ from the patients in a primary care practice, and effectiveness in the community may differ from efficacy as measured in an RCT. The potential exists for misinterpretation of clinical trial results. Analysis of endpoints not specified at the outset, post hoc, or subgroup analyses should be viewed as hypothesis-generating rather than hypothesis-testing.

APPENDIX I.A.2. LITERATURE REVIEW
The results of the literature search are provided below in terms of the population (top) and clinical (bottom) portions of the evidence model. A total of 43,627 records were obtained from the search; the following notes the number of records per topic.

**Population model search citations by topic area (22,017 total):**
- cardiovascular disease: 3,675 citations
- hypertension: 93 citations
- diabetes: 65 citations
- dyslipidemia: 73 citations
- cardiovascular morbidity and mortality: 225 citations
- noncardiovascular morbidity and mortality: 4,272 citations

**Clinical model search citations by topic area (11,268 total):**
- cardiovascular disease: 1,866 citations
- hypertension: 616 citations
- diabetes: 380 citations
- dyslipidemia: 917 citations
### Evidence Model Questions
#### Population Model (Top)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arrow Number</th>
<th>Question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Not considered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>What is the evidence that relates weight to abdominal fat?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Not considered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>What is the evidence that relates abdominal fat to high blood pressure in minority populations?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>What is the evidence that relates abdominal fat to dyslipidemia in minority populations?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>What is the evidence that relates abdominal fat to diabetes in minority populations?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>What is the evidence that relates abdominal fat to cardiovascular disease?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>What is the evidence that relates abdominal fat to noncardiovascular mortality and morbidity?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>What is the evidence that relates abdominal fat to cardiovascular mortality and morbidity?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>What is the evidence that relates weight to high blood pressure in minority populations?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>What is the evidence that relates weight to dyslipidemia in minority populations?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>What is the evidence that relates weight to diabetes in minority populations?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>What is the evidence that relates weight to cardiovascular disease?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>What is the evidence that relates weight to noncardiovascular mortality and morbidity?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>What is the evidence that relates weight to cardiovascular mortality and morbidity?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arrow Number</td>
<td>Question</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Not considered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Not considered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>What is the evidence that treatment directly affects abdominal fat?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>What is the evidence that treatment directly affects weight loss?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>What is the evidence directly relating treatment and fitness?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>What is the evidence that fitness is directly related to weight loss?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>What is the evidence that weight loss directly affects abdominal fat?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>What is the evidence that a reduction of abdominal fat is directly related to cardiovascular disease?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>What is the evidence that a reduction of abdominal fat is directly related to cardiovascular mortality and morbidity?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>What is the evidence that a reduction in abdominal fat directly affects high blood pressure?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>What is the evidence that a reduction in abdominal fat directly affects dyslipidemia (cholesterol)?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>What is the evidence that a reduction in abdominal fat directly affects glucose tolerance?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>What is the evidence that weight loss directly affects high blood pressure?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>What is the evidence that weight loss directly affects dyslipidemia (cholesterol)?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>What is the evidence that weight loss directly affects glucose tolerance?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>What is the evidence that fitness directly affects high blood pressure?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>What is the evidence that fitness directly affects dyslipidemia (cholesterol)?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>What is the evidence that fitness directly affects glucose tolerance?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>What is the evidence that fitness is directly related to noncardiovascular mortality?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>What is the evidence that fitness is directly related to cardiovascular mortality and morbidity?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>What is the evidence that fitness is directly related to cardiovascular disease?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>What is the evidence directly relating weight loss and noncardiovascular mortality and morbidity?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>What is the evidence directly relating weight loss and cardiovascular mortality and morbidity?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>What is the evidence directly relating weight loss and cardiovascular disease?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
cardiovascular morbidity and mortality 71 citations
noncardiovascular morbidity and mortality 6,507 citations

Note: The number of citations per topic do not add up to the total citations per top or bottom model or the overall NLM search. The total number includes all of those listed above plus the citations for fitness, weight loss, and abdominal fat.

APPENDIX II. DESCRIPTION OF EVIDENCE

A. Why Treat Overweight and Obesity?

Blood Pressure
To evaluate the effect of weight loss on blood pressure and hypertension, 76 articles reporting randomized controlled trials (RCTs) were reviewed. Of these, 60 were lifestyle trials that studied diet and/or physical activity and 16 were pharmacotherapy trials of anorexiant. The 60 lifestyle trials were: 346-352, 354-380, 405, 470, 473, 484, 490, 674-694
The 16 articles on pharmacotherapy trials of anorexiant were: 386-395, 512, 695-699

Lifestyle Trials
Of the 60 lifestyle trials reviewed, 35 were accepted and 25 were not included for these reasons:
- the no-treatment control group also lost weight; 470, 473, 484, 490, 675-680, 683, 684, 690, 692, 693
- there was no appropriate control group; 687
- the dropout rate was more than 35 percent; 685, 686
- the results were not compared according to randomized treatment assignments; 681
- the population at baseline was not overweight; 689-691
- blood pressure was not reported as a primary or secondary outcome; 695 or
- the intervention period was less than 4 weeks. 674

Pharmacotherapy Trials
Of the 16 pharmacotherapy trials reviewed, 10 were accepted and 6 were not included because:
- the drug that was tested is not recommended for weight loss [ephedrine alone [a beta-adrenoceptor agonist] 697 [ephedrine combined with caffeine] 698 [testosterone] 699 [cimetidine], or
- only very short-term data are available. 512

Serum/Plasma Lipids and Lipoproteins
Sixty-five RCT articles were evaluated for the effect of weight loss on serum/plasma concentrations of total cholesterol, low-density lipoprotein cholesterol, very low-density lipoprotein cholesterol, triglycerides, and high-density lipoprotein cholesterol. In 52 of these trials weight loss was induced by various lifestyle modifications, including diet modification and increased physical activity. 356, 365, 367-370, 373, 380, 384, 399-406, 412, 431, 433, 434, 440, 446, 447, 469, 470, 473, 475, 484, 490, 677-679, 681, 683-685, 688-690, 693, 694, 700-709
Thirteen RCT articles were reviewed that considered the effects of pharmacological therapy on weight loss and subsequent changes in total serum cholesterol level. 386, 390-395, 395, 407, 408, 696-698, 710, 711

Lifestyle Trials
Of the 52 lifestyle trials:
- 27 RCT articles examined the effect on plasma lipids of weight loss induced by diet alone, i.e., these studies simply included a diet intervention without a formal physical activity program or medications. 356, 368-370, 373, 380, 400, 401, 404, 406, 447, 678, 685, 700, 703, 705, 707, 706, 708, 709
- 11 RCT articles examined weight loss induced by increased physical activity alone; 365, 401, 404, 406, 447, 678, 685, 700, 703, 705, 707 and
- 14 RCT articles considered the combination of caloric restriction and physical activity. 367, 380, 384, 403, 405, 407, 470, 473, 475, 681, 684, 694

Of the 52 lifestyle trials reviewed, 14 met the criteria for inclusion. 365, 368, 370, 373, 380, 384, 399-406 The
remaining 38 were not considered because:

- The no-treatment control group also lost weight. 434, 446, 469, 470, 473, 475, 484, 490, 677-679, 683, 684, 688, 690, 691, 694, 701, 705, 706, 708, 709
- There was no appropriate control group; 431, 700
- There was no difference in weight loss between the treatment and control group; 447, 702, 703
- The dropout rate was more than 35 percent; 685
- The population was not overweight; 689, 690
- The results were not reported according to randomized treatment; 681
- The outcome measures were not reported separately for the overweight and not overweight groups; 460
- There was no measure of at least one lipoprotein fraction or measure of change in lipids between the beginning and end of treatment; 356, 367, 412, 433, 704
- Lipoprotein concentrations could not be determined from the figures in the paper, or it was difficult to get precise measures. 369

Pharmacotherapy Trials
The effects of pharmacological therapy on weight loss and subsequent changes in total serum cholesterol levels were evaluated by examining 13 RCT articles: 5 on the effect of dexfenfluramine; 366, 390-393 2 on fluoxetine; 408, 711 1 on the combination of phentermine and fenfluramine (phen/fen); 399 2 on orlistat; 407, 710 1 on testosterone decanoate; 698 1 on ephedrine alone or in combination with caffeine; 697 and 1 on a beta adrenocceptor agonist. 696 Of the 13 pharmacotherapy trials reviewed, 8 were accepted and 5 were not considered for these reasons:

- The main outcome of the treatment was not weight loss; 698
- The drug in question is not currently being recommended for weight loss; 696-698
- The dropout rate was more than 35 percent; 711
- It was a marginal 12-week study. 710

Impaired Glucose Tolerance and Diabetes
Forty-nine articles on RCTs were reviewed to evaluate the effect of weight loss on fasting blood glucose and fasting insulin. 70, 362, 367, 369, 386, 387, 390-393, 404, 408, 412-415, 439, 440, 446, 470, 473, 474, 482, 485, 490, 492, 493, 576, 676-678, 681, 683, 684, 689, 690, 693, 694, 696-698, 700-702, 708, 709, 712

Studies were conducted in individuals with normal blood glucose levels (fasting plasma glucose < 115 mg/dL [< 6.4mmol/L]), 367, 373, 386, 387, 390-393, 403, 412, 415, 677, 678, 681, 683, 684, 689, 690, 694, 696-698 in individuals with impaired glucose tolerance (fasting plasma glucose of < 140 mg/dL [7.8 mmol/L] or 2 hours postprandial plasma glucose of ≥ 140 to < 200 mg/dL [7.8 to 11.1 mmol/L]), 70, 369 or in individuals with diabetes (fasting plasma glucose of > 140 mg/dL or 2 hours postprandial plasma blood glucose ≥ 200mg/dL). 362, 404, 408, 413, 439, 440, 446, 470, 473, 474, 482, 485, 490, 492, 493, 576, 676, 693, 701, 702, 708, 709, 712*

Lifestyle Trials
Of the 38 trials reviewed on the role of lifestyle in weight loss and subsequent changes in blood glucose levels, 16 were on diet alone, 70, 373, 412, 413, 415, 439, 440, 576, 677, 683, 689, 690, 701, 702, 708, 709 8 dealt with physical activity alone 70, 369, 404, 474, 676, 678, 690, 700, 708, 709 8 focused on diet plus physical activity, 70, 362, 403, 446, 470, 473, 681, 684 and 5 examined the role of behavior therapy. 367, 482, 485, 490, 493 One study included diet, behavior therapy and physical activity. 694 One study included diet, behavior therapy and physical activity. 694 One study 414 included diet, behavioral therapy and drug therapy. Of the 38 trials, 9 were accepted, and 29 were not considered for these reasons:

- There was a control group that had a weight loss intervention or there was no difference in weight loss between the treatment and control

* The reviewed articles used the “old” definitions of the American Diabetes Association (ADA) for impaired glucose tolerance and diabetes. As of November 1997, the new ADA definitions define “impaired fasting glucose” as those individuals having a fasting plasma glucose of 110 to 125 mg/dL, and “diabetes” as those individuals having a fasting plasma glucose of ≥ 126 mg/dL or 2 hours postprandial plasma glucose of ≥ 200 mg/dL.
groups; 439, 446, 470, 473, 474, 482, 485, 490, 492, 493, 576, 676-678, 683, 684-690, 693, 694, 701, 702, 708, 709

- The dropout rate was more than 35 percent; 415
- The results were not reported according to randomized treatment assignments; 681
- Outcome measures were not reported separately for the obese and nonobese people who lost weight; 440
- There was no appropriate control group; 700 or
- The population was not overweight. 689, 690

**Pharmacotherapy Trials**
Of the 12 pharmacotherapy trials reviewed, 8 were accepted and 4 were excluded for these reasons:

- The main outcome of the treatment was not weight loss; 698 or
- The drug used is not currently being recommended for weight loss. 696-698, 712

**B. What Treatments Are Effective?**

**Dietary Therapy**
Of the 86 RCT articles evaluated for the effectiveness of dietary therapy on weight loss, 49 were accepted; 37 were not considered for the following reasons:

- Diet alone was not evaluated; 376, 405
- There was no control group; 442, 446, 467, 676, 680, 683, 686, 688, 693, 702, 709, 713-720
- There was no appropriate control group; 677, 704
- The dropout rate was more than 35 percent; 415
- The weight loss intervention was less than 12 weeks; 402, 474, 477, 576, 674, 708, 714, 721-723
- The study did not provide specific information to assess the diet; 724 or
- The patients were not overweight. 689-691

**Physical Activity**
Twenty-three RCT articles were reviewed for the effect of physical activity on weight loss, body fat distribution (abdominal fat), and fitness level; of these, 13 were accepted and 10 were not considered. The 23 RCTs were: 346, 363, 365, 375, 401, 404, 406, 432, 434, 445-447, 474, 475, 678, 685, 700, 705, 707, 723-727

Of the 23 RCTs, 11 were conducted on overweight or obese populations with an average body mass index > 25 kg/m². 346, 365, 369, 401, 434, 445-447, 685, 700, 725

Four RCTs were conducted on an overweight or obese population with an average weight of 120 percent to 160 percent of ideal body weight. 363, 406, 432, 475

One RCT was conducted on obese or overweight populations with a percent of body fat > 25 for men or > 30 for women. 678

Nine RCT articles presented results on men, 363, 365, 369, 406, 700, 705, 707, 726 and six RCTs were conducted on women, 434, 445, 446, 678, 685, 725 and seven RCTs covered both men and women. 346, 401, 404, 447, 474, 475, 727

One RCT article included hypertensive individuals, 346 three RCTs included people with type 2 diabetes, 404, 446, 474 and one RCT included individuals with hyperlipidemia. 685

Ten RCT articles were not included because:

- The population at baseline was not overweight, 705, 727 or it was not clear if the population was overweight; 707, 726
- The intervention period was less than 12 weeks; 474
- There was no appropriate control group; 475, 678, 700, 725
- The dropout rate was more than 35 percent. 685

**Combined Therapy**
Twenty-three RCT articles investigated the effects on body weight of a combination of a reduced-calorie diet with increased physical activity. The control groups used diet alone or exercise alone. 346, 365, 375-377, 380, 384, 405, 434, 435, 445, 448, 469-475
Of the 23, 15 were accepted and 8 were not considered for the following reasons:

- There was no exercise-alone or diet-alone comparison group; 376, 405, 475, 681, 684, 728, 729
- The intervention was less than 12 weeks. 476

**Behavior Therapy**

**Additional Benefits Beyond Other Weight Loss Approaches**

Thirty-six RCT articles were reviewed to evaluate whether behavior therapy provides additional benefit beyond other weight loss approaches. Of the 36, 4 were accepted and 32 were not considered. The 36 trials were: 350, 373, 376, 395, 399, 400, 412, 414, 415, 436-438, 443, 444, 469, 470, 473, 476, 478, 490, 510, 677, 679, 688, 700, 708, 709, 730-736

Four RCT articles that compared behavior therapy plus another weight loss strategy to that weight loss strategy without behavior therapy, and that met the inclusion criteria, were accepted. Three of the accepted studies compared behavior therapy to a dietary intervention. 436, 476, 477

No studies were found that compared behavior therapy to either exercise or to a combination of diet and exercise. One study was found that compared behavior therapy to drug therapy. 478

Thirty-two of the articles were not considered because:

- Either behavior therapy was not used or it was not possible to ascertain whether it was used; 412, 490, 677, 730
- Behavior therapy was used either alone or as part of an intervention, but the comparison groups used did not allow for determining the unique effect of behavior therapy; 350, 373, 376, 399, 400, 414, 415, 444, 470, 700, 732, 735 or
- Behavior therapy was integrated into all of the intervention groups, making it impossible to detect the unique effect of behavior therapy. 379, 395, 437, 438, 443, 469, 473, 510, 679, 688, 708, 709, 731, 733, 734, 736

**Comparison of Behavior Therapy Strategies**

Another way to examine the efficacy of behavior therapy in the treatment of obesity is to evaluate studies that compare various behavioral techniques to one another. These studies are primarily from the behavioral psychology literature.

Thirty-one RCT articles were reviewed that compared one or more behavioral interventions. 367, 445, 476, 479-495, 632, 680, 694, 737-744

Most of the trials used a group format and followed subjects over time; three included booster sessions. 484, 487, 491 Twelve of the studies provided 1 year or more of follow-up weights. Most studies lacked a pure, no-treatment, control group. There were limited intervention data on special populations, including various ethnic groups and populations with low income and education. Men and women were well represented. The majority of patients were young and middle-aged adults.

Nine of the trials studied special patient populations: subjects with type 2 diabetes; 482, 485, 489, 490, 492, 493, 739 subjects at high risk for coronary artery disease; 484 and subjects with binge eating disorder. 494

Trials with subjects with type 2 diabetes used behavioral approaches to increase adherence to the American Diabetes Association diet and improve glycemic control, rather than to lose weight as the primary objective (although all reported an effect on weight).

Of the 31 articles reviewed, 19 were accepted and the following 12 were not included because:

- The results were not presented by treatment group; 694
- The dropout rate was more than 35 percent; 445, 632, 742, 744
- Self-reported body weight was used; 741
- There was no control group; 680
- The treatment duration was less than 12 weeks; 737-739, 743 or
- The population was not overweight. 740
Pharmacotherapy

Forty RCTs evaluated the effect of pharmacotherapy on weight loss. In most studies, advice or behavioral therapy that promoted reduced energy intake and increased physical activity was included in all treatment arms, including the placebo group. The RCTs addressed the following pharmacotherapies: BRL 26830A, cimetidine, dexfenfluramine, ephedrine, fenfluramine, fenfluramine and phentermine, fenoxetine, fluoxetine, mianserine, orlistat, phenylpropanolamine, phentermine, testosterone, yohimbine, and sibutramine. Most of the patients in these trials weighed more than 120 percent of their ideal body weight or had a BMI of 25 to 30.

RCTs that examined cimetidine, mianserine, yohimbine, testosterone, fenoxetine, and BRL 26830A were not considered either because they are not now being studied for obesity treatment or because they are not approved by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) for obesity treatment. Fluoxetine, and other selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors commonly used for the treatment of depression, have not been approved for use as antiobesity agents.

Ephedrine has been tested alone and in combination with caffeine. Although a significant 3.4 kg difference was found at 6 months in patients treated with this combination compared with those on placebo, the ephedrine/caffeine combination is not approved by the FDA for use in the United States. In addition, studies with a dropout rate greater than 35 percent were not considered. As of September 1997, two FDA-approved drugs, dexfenfluramine and fenfluramine, were withdrawn from the market by the manufacturer due to an observed association with valvular heart disease in patients taking the combination of phentermine/fenfluramine, or “Redux.” The panel’s deliberations on the evidence regarding these drugs are included in the report for informational purposes only.

Weight Loss Surgery

Fourteen RCTs compared the weight-reducing effect of different surgical interventions. One study compared the effectiveness of a very low-calorie diet to surgery. Another study compared the effectiveness of horizontal-banded to vertical-banded gastroplasty in a pretreated, very low-calorie formula diet group. Six studies compared two or more of the following procedures: gastroplasty (vertical or horizontal), gastric bypass, and gastric partitioning. Seven studies reported long-term (1 year or more) follow up. Two studies looked at comorbidity factors associated with weight loss.

Of these 14 RCT studies, the following five were not included because:

- Two studies looked at the effect on weight loss of jejunoileostomy, a procedure that is no longer recommended; they were not included because of the complications associated with this procedure; and
- Three studies compared the use of the gastric balloon to sham procedures; however, this procedure is no longer utilized except in research studies.
Appendix III. Special Populations

A.1. Prevalence of Overweight/Obesity in U.S. Children
a. Number and percentage of children (ages 6 to 11 years) and adolescents (ages 12 to 17 years) who were overweight, by gender and race/ethnicity—United States, Third National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey (NHANES III), 1988-1994.


A.2. Overweight or BMI Data for Puerto Rican-Americans, Cuban-Americans, and Selected Samples of American Indians, Asians, and Pacific Islanders.
a. Percentage of overweight Cuban and Puerto Rican males and females, age 20 to 74, 1982-1984.


c. Prevalence of overweight (BMI ≥ 85th percentile) and obesity (BMI ≥ 95th percentile) in American Indians and Alaska Natives and United States all races, by gender and age, 1987.


e. Body mass index in four groups of adult Samoans, by age and gender.

f. Prevalence of obesity (BMI ≥ 30 kg/m²) in 1991, by age, sex, and western Samoa location.

A.3. Socioeconomic Status Differences in the Prevalence of Overweight/Obesity


d. Age-adjusted percentage of people 20 years of age and older who are overweight (high BMI) by gender, race/ethnicity, and income level, 1988-1991.

e. Percentage of medicare beneficiaries who are overweight by race, gender, and education, 1991.

f. Percentage of medicare beneficiaries who are overweight by race, gender, and annual family income, 1991.

Note: Due to the fact that the prevalence estimates in this appendix are based on available published data, the definitions used to define overweight and obesity are not the same as those used by the panel.
### TABLE III.A.1.a:

**Number and Percentage of Children (aged 6-11 years) and Adolescents (aged 12-17 years) who were Overweight\(^1\), by Gender and Race/Ethnicity\(^2\)**

**United States, Third National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey (NHANES III), 1988-1994**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Characteristic</th>
<th>No.</th>
<th>(%)</th>
<th>(95% CI)(^3)</th>
<th>No.</th>
<th>(%)</th>
<th>(95% CI)(^3)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Males</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White, non-Hispanic</td>
<td>446</td>
<td>(13.2)</td>
<td>(8.7%-17.6%)</td>
<td>281</td>
<td>(11.6)</td>
<td>(7.6%-15.6%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Black, non-Hispanic</td>
<td>584</td>
<td>(14.7)</td>
<td>(11.2%-18.3%)</td>
<td>412</td>
<td>(12.5)</td>
<td>(9.2%-15.8%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mexican-American</td>
<td>565</td>
<td>(18.8)</td>
<td>(14.6%-23.0%)</td>
<td>406</td>
<td>(15.0)</td>
<td>(10.8%-19.1%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>1,673</td>
<td>(14.7)</td>
<td>(11.5%-17.9%)</td>
<td>1,154</td>
<td>(12.3)</td>
<td>(9.3%-15.3%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Females</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White, non-Hispanic</td>
<td>428</td>
<td>(11.9)</td>
<td>(7.2%-16.5%)</td>
<td>342</td>
<td>(9.6 )</td>
<td>(5.5%-13.6%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Black, non-Hispanic</td>
<td>538</td>
<td>(17.9)</td>
<td>(14.5%-21.2%)</td>
<td>447</td>
<td>(16.3)</td>
<td>(11.9%-20.8%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mexican-American</td>
<td>581</td>
<td>(15.8)</td>
<td>(10.3%-21.3%)</td>
<td>412</td>
<td>(14.0)</td>
<td>(6.8%-21.2%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>1,606</td>
<td>(12.5)</td>
<td>(9.4%-15.7%)</td>
<td>1,274</td>
<td>(10.7)</td>
<td>(7.7%-13.7%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total(^5)</strong></td>
<td>3,279</td>
<td>(13.7)</td>
<td>(11.4%-15.9%)</td>
<td>2,428</td>
<td>(11.5)</td>
<td>(9.0%-14.0%)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(1\) Overweight is defined as a BMI (kg/m\(^2\)) at or above gender- and age-specific 95th-percentile BMI cutoff points calculated at 6-month age intervals, derived respectively from National Health Examination Survey, cycles 2 and 3.

\(2\) Numbers for other racial/ethnic groups were too small for meaningful analysis.

\(3\) Confidence interval

\(4\) Excludes pregnant females and one person with an outlier sample weight.

\(5\) Total estimates include racial/ethnic groups not shown.

Source: *MMWR, 3-7-97*.
TABLE III.A.1.b:

PREVALENCE OF OVERWEIGHT (BMI ≥85TH PERCENTILE) IN NATIVE AMERICAN SCHOOL-AGE CHILDREN BY GENDER AND AGE, 1990-91*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Boys</th>
<th>Girls</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Number</td>
<td>%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>364</td>
<td>36.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>539</td>
<td>30.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>482</td>
<td>46.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>524</td>
<td>42.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>511</td>
<td>45.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>493</td>
<td>40.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>419</td>
<td>36.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>369</td>
<td>47.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>281</td>
<td>43.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>246</td>
<td>35.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>249</td>
<td>39.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>204</td>
<td>26.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>165</td>
<td>35.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>32.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Adapted from Jackson MY and Strauss KF.
### Selected Studies Describing the Prevalence of Overweight in Native Americans, 1981-1993

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Population</th>
<th>Source</th>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Definition of Overweight</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>Males</th>
<th>Females</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Preschool children</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Native Americans, national</td>
<td>Measured</td>
<td>&lt;5</td>
<td>1988</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>11.2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mescalero Apache, NM</td>
<td>Measured</td>
<td>1-5</td>
<td>1988</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>19.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>School-age children</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Native Americans, national</td>
<td>Measured</td>
<td>5-18</td>
<td>1990-1991</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>39.3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Devils Lake Sioux, ND</td>
<td>Measured</td>
<td>9-13</td>
<td>1989</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>32.1</td>
<td>30.6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Winnebago and Omaha, NE</td>
<td>Measured</td>
<td>7-17</td>
<td>1990</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>32.7</td>
<td>34.4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pueblo Indians, NM</td>
<td>Measured</td>
<td>9-13</td>
<td>1988-1991</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>40.4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Navajo Indians, NM</td>
<td>Measured</td>
<td>9-13</td>
<td>1988-1991</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>29.1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Navajo Indians, NM &amp; AZ</td>
<td>Measured</td>
<td>5-17</td>
<td>1989</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>12.5</td>
<td>11.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Navajo Indians, NM &amp; AZ</td>
<td>Measured</td>
<td>14-18</td>
<td>1988-1990</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>25.0</td>
<td>33.0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Definition of Overweight:
  a=Weight-for-height > 95th percentile NCHS reference population
  b=BMI ≥ 85th% NHANES II reference population
  c=Weight-for-age > 95th NCHS reference population

### TABLE III.A.2.a:

**Percentage of Overweight Cuban and Puerto Rican Males and Females, Ages 20-74, 1982-1984**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gender/Age</th>
<th>Cubans</th>
<th>Puerto Ricans</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Males</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20-24 yrs</td>
<td>21.2</td>
<td>15.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25-34 yrs</td>
<td>27.9</td>
<td>18.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35-44 yrs</td>
<td>25.8</td>
<td>33.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45-54 yrs</td>
<td>34.6</td>
<td>32.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55-64 yrs</td>
<td>31.7</td>
<td>26.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65-74 yrs</td>
<td>31.1</td>
<td>31.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20-29 yrs**</td>
<td>23.5</td>
<td>15.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Females</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20-24 yrs</td>
<td>13.6</td>
<td>23.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25-34 yrs</td>
<td>23.8</td>
<td>26.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35-44 yrs</td>
<td>32.7</td>
<td>42.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45-54 yrs</td>
<td>37.2</td>
<td>50.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55-64 yrs</td>
<td>51.4</td>
<td>49.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65-74 yrs</td>
<td>39.6</td>
<td>61.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20-29 yrs**</td>
<td>16.2</td>
<td>22.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Age adjusted by the direct method to the 1980 census population 20 to 74 years of age using 6 age groups.
** Overweight is defined as a sex-specific body mass index (kilograms divided by height in meters squared) equal to or greater than the 95th percentile for examinees 20 to 29 years of age examined in the second National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey (NHANES II).

Note: Excludes pregnant women.

### Selected Studies Describing the Prevalence of Overweight in Native Americans, 1981-1993

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Population</th>
<th>Source</th>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Definition of Overweight</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>Males</th>
<th>Females</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Adults</td>
<td>Source</td>
<td>Age</td>
<td>Year</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Native Americans, national</td>
<td>Self-report</td>
<td>18+</td>
<td>1987</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>Total</td>
<td>33.7</td>
<td>40.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Native Americans by region</td>
<td>Self-report</td>
<td>18+</td>
<td>1985-1988</td>
<td>a</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Southwest</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>30.0</td>
<td>28.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plains</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>27.8</td>
<td>35.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>West</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>22.7</td>
<td>26.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other regions</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>24.0</td>
<td>23.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alaskan Yup’ik Eskimos</td>
<td>Measured</td>
<td>18+</td>
<td>1987-1988</td>
<td>a</td>
<td></td>
<td>34.0</td>
<td>56.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alaskan Athabascan Indians</td>
<td>Measured</td>
<td>18+</td>
<td>1987-1988</td>
<td>a</td>
<td></td>
<td>29.0</td>
<td>55.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cherokee Indians, NC</td>
<td>Measured</td>
<td>18-27</td>
<td>1982</td>
<td>c</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>59.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Navajo Indians, NM &amp; AZ</td>
<td>Measured</td>
<td>20+</td>
<td>1988</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>43.7</td>
<td>33.1</td>
<td>50.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Navajo Indians, NM &amp; AZ</td>
<td>Measured</td>
<td>20-74</td>
<td>1986-1987</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>42.1</td>
<td>54.7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Penobscot Indians, ME</td>
<td>Self-report</td>
<td>18+</td>
<td>1981</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>35.0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pima Indians, AZ</td>
<td>Measured</td>
<td>20-54</td>
<td>1981-1988</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>61-78</td>
<td>81-87</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>55+</td>
<td>1981-1988</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>31-53</td>
<td>44-74</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zuni Indians, NM</td>
<td>Measured</td>
<td>20-39</td>
<td>1987</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>40.0</td>
<td>33.8</td>
<td>56.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>40-59</td>
<td>1987</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>70.7</td>
<td>55.6</td>
<td>79.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Definition of overweight and obesity used by NHANES/NCHS:

- \( a = \text{BMI} \geq 85\text{th }\% \text{ NHANES II reference population} \)
- \( b = \text{Weight-for-age} > 95\text{th }\% \text{ NCHS reference population} \)
- \( c = > 120\% \text{ desirable weight for height, NHANES I} \)
- \( d = \text{BMI} > 85\text{th }\% \text{ NHANES I reference population} \)
- \( e = \text{BMI} > 27 \text{ kg/m}^2 \text{ for males, BMI} > 26 \text{ kg/m}^2 \text{ for females} \)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Overweight</th>
<th>Obese</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>American</td>
<td>U.S.</td>
<td>American</td>
<td>U.S.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Indians and</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>Indians and</td>
<td>All</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Alaska Natives</td>
<td>Races</td>
<td>Natives</td>
<td>Races</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Males</td>
<td>Total (18+)</td>
<td>33.7</td>
<td>24.1**</td>
<td>13.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>18-24</td>
<td>21.5</td>
<td>13.1**</td>
<td>11.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25-34</td>
<td>31.8</td>
<td>19.5**</td>
<td>11.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>35-44</td>
<td>37.8</td>
<td>27.0**</td>
<td>11.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>45-54</td>
<td>49.1</td>
<td>33.8**</td>
<td>28.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>55-64</td>
<td>45.5</td>
<td>33.1**</td>
<td>16.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>65+</td>
<td>25.2</td>
<td>23.0**</td>
<td>11.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Females</td>
<td>Total (18+)</td>
<td>40.3</td>
<td>25.0**</td>
<td>16.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>18-24</td>
<td>25.2</td>
<td>11.5**</td>
<td>11.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25-34</td>
<td>45.1</td>
<td>17.4**</td>
<td>13.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>35-44</td>
<td>48.5</td>
<td>28.1**</td>
<td>19.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>45-54</td>
<td>54.0</td>
<td>32.0**</td>
<td>18.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>55-64</td>
<td>45.6</td>
<td>36.2**</td>
<td>18.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>65+</td>
<td>45.6</td>
<td>30.1**</td>
<td>20.7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Agency for Health Care Policy and Research, 1987 National Medical Expenditure Survey (NMES). American Indians and Alaska Natives who are eligible for care through the Indian Health Service (IHS) and who live on or near reservations. BMI, body mass index in kg/m².

** Statistically significant at \( \alpha = 0.05 \).

*** Relative SE greater \( \geq 30\% \)

**TABLE III.A.2.d:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Trait</th>
<th>Chinese</th>
<th>Filipino</th>
<th>Japanese</th>
<th>Other Asian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Age (mean ± SD)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Males</td>
<td>40.2 ± 14.2</td>
<td>39.2 ± 13.4</td>
<td>42.1 ± 14.1</td>
<td>35.9 ± 10.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Females</td>
<td>38.0 ± 13.6</td>
<td>36.8 ± 11.6</td>
<td>40.9 ± 13.4</td>
<td>34.1 ± 10.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>BMI ≥ 24.4 kg/m²</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Males</td>
<td>26.9</td>
<td>41.8</td>
<td>38.0</td>
<td>28.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Females</td>
<td>12.8</td>
<td>25.5</td>
<td>18.0</td>
<td>14.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mean BMI</strong>*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Males</td>
<td>22.9</td>
<td>23.9</td>
<td>23.7</td>
<td>23.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Females</td>
<td>21.2</td>
<td>22.8</td>
<td>21.6</td>
<td>22.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Adjusted for age, marital status, education, and alcohol intake.

TABLE III.A.2.e:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gender/Age</th>
<th>Western Samoa</th>
<th>Manu’a</th>
<th>Tutuila</th>
<th>Hawaii</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Males</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20-24</td>
<td>24.6 ± 2.8</td>
<td>26.4 ± 2.6</td>
<td>26.5 ± 3.6</td>
<td>30.4 ± 4.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25-34</td>
<td>25.1 ± 3.2</td>
<td>30.7 ± 4.4</td>
<td>30.2 ± 5.0</td>
<td>31.3 ± 6.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35-44</td>
<td>26.5 ± 4.3</td>
<td>29.2 ± 4.7</td>
<td>30.4 ± 5.5</td>
<td>32.6 ± 5.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45-54</td>
<td>27.1 ± 4.9</td>
<td>27.2 ± 4.7</td>
<td>32.0 ± 6.4</td>
<td>31.3 ± 5.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55-64</td>
<td>28.8 ± 5.4</td>
<td>28.0 ± 5.9</td>
<td>28.8 ± 5.5</td>
<td>32.1 ± 5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65-74</td>
<td>26.5 ± 3.9</td>
<td>28.7 ± 4.5</td>
<td>28.6 ± 6.2</td>
<td>31.6 ± 8.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td>26.2 ± 4.2</td>
<td>28.6 ± 5.0</td>
<td>29.8 ± 5.7</td>
<td>31.6 ± 5.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Females</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20-24</td>
<td>25.3 ± 3.9</td>
<td>29.5 ± 7.9</td>
<td>27.9 ± 4.9</td>
<td>29.9 ± 5.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25-34</td>
<td>26.7 ± 4.1</td>
<td>32.3 ± 6.0</td>
<td>32.4 ± 6.6</td>
<td>34.3 ± 7.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35-44</td>
<td>29.0 ± 4.7</td>
<td>35.1 ± 5.8</td>
<td>34.4 ± 6.6</td>
<td>35.8 ± 7.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45-54</td>
<td>29.6 ± 4.8</td>
<td>33.8 ± 7.4</td>
<td>35.3 ± 6.7</td>
<td>34.7 ± 6.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55-64</td>
<td>31.0 ± 8.4</td>
<td>30.7 ± 6.1</td>
<td>33.3 ± 7.5</td>
<td>34.1 ± 5.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65-74</td>
<td>28.6 ± 4.1</td>
<td>29.5 ± 5.8</td>
<td>32.3 ± 5.9</td>
<td>33.4 ± 6.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td>27.7 ± 4.8</td>
<td>32.7 ± 6.9</td>
<td>33.0 ± 6.9</td>
<td>33.6 ± 7.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* SD. BMI in kg/m².
### TABLE III.A.2.f:

**Prevalence of Obesity (BMI ≥ 30 kg/m²) in 1991, by Age, Gender, and Western Samoa Location**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gender/Age</th>
<th>Apia No. (%)</th>
<th>Poutasi No. (%)</th>
<th>Tuasivi No. (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Males</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25-34</td>
<td>71 (45.1)</td>
<td>58 (36.2)</td>
<td>51 (21.6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35-44</td>
<td>77 (70.1)</td>
<td>58 (43.1)</td>
<td>58 (46.6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45-54</td>
<td>64 (67.2)</td>
<td>48 (52.1)</td>
<td>51 (45.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55-64</td>
<td>78 (51.3)</td>
<td>40 (57.5)</td>
<td>44 (40.9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65+</td>
<td>40 (60.0)</td>
<td>28 (32.1)</td>
<td>30 (43.3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overall</td>
<td>330 (58.5)</td>
<td>232 (44.4)</td>
<td>234 (39.3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Age-std*</td>
<td>56.9</td>
<td>43.5</td>
<td>35.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95% CI</td>
<td>51.2 - 62.6</td>
<td>36.9 - 50.1</td>
<td>29.7 - 42.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Females</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25-34</td>
<td>97 (57.7)</td>
<td>74 (52.7)</td>
<td>61 (52.5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35-44</td>
<td>83 (89.2)</td>
<td>48 (66.7)</td>
<td>77 (57.9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45-54</td>
<td>120 (84.2)</td>
<td>40 (70.0)</td>
<td>63 (66.7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55-64</td>
<td>96 (86.5)</td>
<td>34 (64.7)</td>
<td>40 (52.5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65+</td>
<td>43 (62.8)</td>
<td>27 (63.0)</td>
<td>30 (46.7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overall</td>
<td>439 (77.7)</td>
<td>223 (61.9)</td>
<td>271 (57.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Age-std*</td>
<td>74.3</td>
<td>61.5</td>
<td>56.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95% CI</td>
<td>69.9 - 78.7</td>
<td>55.1 - 68.0</td>
<td>50.2 - 62.7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Age-std=age standardized by direct method to 1986 census population.

### TABLE III.A.3.a:

**Prevalence of Overweight* in U.S. Adults, by Race/Ethnicity, Gender, and Education, 1988-1991**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gender</th>
<th>&lt;12y</th>
<th>12y</th>
<th>&gt;12y</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>&lt;12y</th>
<th>12y</th>
<th>&gt;12y</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>&lt;12y</th>
<th>12y</th>
<th>&gt;12y</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Males</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Females</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>52</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Overweight is defined as ≥ 27.8 kg/m² for men and ≥ 27.3 kg/m² for women.
Source: NCHS/CDC NHANES III Phase 1, 1988-1991. 760

### TABLE III.A.3.b:

**Prevalence of Overweight* in U.S. Adults, by Race/Ethnicity, Gender, and Annual Family Income, 1988-1991**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gender</th>
<th>&lt;$10K</th>
<th>$10-29,999</th>
<th>$30-49,999</th>
<th>$50,001+</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>&lt;$10K</th>
<th>$10-29,999</th>
<th>$30-49,999</th>
<th>$50,001+</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>&lt;$10K</th>
<th>$10-29,999</th>
<th>$30-49,999</th>
<th>$50,001+</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Males</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>52</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>52</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>52</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Females</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>52</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>52</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>52</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Overweight is defined as ≥ 27.8 kg/m² for men and ≥ 27.3 kg/m² for women.
Source: NCHS/CDC NHANES III Phase 1, 1988-1991. 760
## TABLE III.A.3.c:

### Prevalence of Overweight* in U.S. Adults, by Age, Race/Ethnicity, Gender, and Occupation, 1988-1991

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>White Collar</th>
<th>Blue Collar</th>
<th>Farm</th>
<th>Service</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>White Collar</th>
<th>Blue Collar</th>
<th>Farm</th>
<th>Service</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>White Collar</th>
<th>Blue Collar</th>
<th>Farm</th>
<th>Service</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Males</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25-44</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>36±</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>30±</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45-64</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>38±</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>54±</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>38±</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>21±</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Females</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25-44</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>29</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45-64</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>45±</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>42</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Overweight is defined as ≥ 27.8 kg/m² for men and ≥ 27.3 kg/m² for women.

± Estimate not reliable because of small sample size.


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sex and Poverty</th>
<th>Total Population</th>
<th>Non-Hispanic White</th>
<th>Non-Hispanic Black</th>
<th>Mexican American</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sample Percent</td>
<td>Sample Percent</td>
<td>Sample Percent</td>
<td>Sample Percent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>SE</td>
<td>SE</td>
<td>SE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Males</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Below poverty</td>
<td>712</td>
<td>30.4</td>
<td>142</td>
<td>29.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2.24</td>
<td>3.02</td>
<td>211</td>
<td>29.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2.53</td>
<td>3.38</td>
<td>338</td>
<td>36.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At or above poverty</td>
<td>3,069</td>
<td>31.9</td>
<td>1,625</td>
<td>32.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.02</td>
<td>724</td>
<td>1.65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2.00</td>
<td>2.00</td>
<td>621</td>
<td>40.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Under 131% poverty</td>
<td>1,034</td>
<td>32.8</td>
<td>238</td>
<td>33.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2.49</td>
<td>3.18</td>
<td>313</td>
<td>28.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2.20</td>
<td>3.72</td>
<td>453</td>
<td>37.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>131-350% poverty</td>
<td>1,793</td>
<td>32.7</td>
<td>865</td>
<td>33.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.38</td>
<td>1.64</td>
<td>460</td>
<td>33.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2.26</td>
<td>1.75</td>
<td>401</td>
<td>41.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Over 350% poverty</td>
<td>954</td>
<td>29.0</td>
<td>664</td>
<td>28.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.34</td>
<td>1.39</td>
<td>162</td>
<td>36.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3.31</td>
<td>4.61</td>
<td>105</td>
<td>46.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Females</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Below poverty</td>
<td>850</td>
<td>47.3</td>
<td>189</td>
<td>46.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2.70</td>
<td>5.12</td>
<td>290</td>
<td>50.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3.96</td>
<td>347</td>
<td>50.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At or above poverty</td>
<td>2,710</td>
<td>32.2</td>
<td>1,442</td>
<td>30.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.20</td>
<td>1.34</td>
<td>637</td>
<td>49.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.61</td>
<td>4.44</td>
<td>540</td>
<td>44.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Under 131% poverty</td>
<td>1,185</td>
<td>46.1</td>
<td>321</td>
<td>44.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2.11</td>
<td>3.88</td>
<td>390</td>
<td>51.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3.42</td>
<td>50.3</td>
<td>441</td>
<td>44.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>131-350% poverty</td>
<td>1,643</td>
<td>33.8</td>
<td>806</td>
<td>31.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.49</td>
<td>1.54</td>
<td>421</td>
<td>49.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2.12</td>
<td>4.21</td>
<td>349</td>
<td>44.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Over 350% poverty</td>
<td>732</td>
<td>28.0</td>
<td>504</td>
<td>26.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2.30</td>
<td>2.39</td>
<td>116</td>
<td>46.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>97</td>
<td>40.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>6.81</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Includes data for racial/ethnic groups not shown separately.

Note: BMI is an index used to relate weight to stature. For this analysis, overweight in men is defined as a BMI ≥ 27.8 kg/m²; for women, it is defined as a BMI ≥ 27.3 kg/m².

TABLE III.A.3.e:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gender/ Age</th>
<th>Black</th>
<th>White</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;HS</td>
<td>HS</td>
<td>&gt;HS</td>
<td>Total</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Males</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65-74</td>
<td>32.1</td>
<td>33.9**</td>
<td>47.5**</td>
<td>34.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75+</td>
<td>20.1</td>
<td>14.9**</td>
<td>16.6**</td>
<td>21.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All ages</td>
<td>27.4</td>
<td>26.5</td>
<td>35.5**</td>
<td>28.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Females</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65-74</td>
<td>61.8</td>
<td>45.7</td>
<td>45.0**</td>
<td>54.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75+</td>
<td>44.7</td>
<td>12.3</td>
<td>43.9</td>
<td>40.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All ages</td>
<td>55.2</td>
<td>32.7</td>
<td>44.6</td>
<td>48.7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Overweight is defined as a BMI ≥ 27.8 kg/m² for males and ≥ 27.3 kg/m² for females.

** Based on samples of fewer than 30 persons.


*Percentages may not add to 100 because of rounding.*
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gender/Age</th>
<th>≤$10,000</th>
<th>$10,001-30,000</th>
<th>$30,001-50,000</th>
<th>$50,001+</th>
<th>Unknown/Total</th>
<th>≤$10,000</th>
<th>$10,001-30,000</th>
<th>$30,001-50,000</th>
<th>$50,001+</th>
<th>Unknown/Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Males</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65-74</td>
<td>24.0</td>
<td>41.7</td>
<td>27.2</td>
<td>59.02**</td>
<td>0.0**</td>
<td>34.0</td>
<td>26.2</td>
<td>32.3</td>
<td>30.7**</td>
<td>23.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75+</td>
<td>17.8</td>
<td>27.9</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>21.8</td>
<td>16.1</td>
<td>17.3</td>
<td>9.9</td>
<td>9.3</td>
<td>11.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All ages</td>
<td>20.6</td>
<td>35.2</td>
<td>11.3</td>
<td>0.0**</td>
<td>28.9**</td>
<td>22.0</td>
<td>26.3</td>
<td>22.7</td>
<td>18.0</td>
<td>19.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Females</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65-74</td>
<td>59.1</td>
<td>46.1</td>
<td>27.2</td>
<td>34.0**</td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>54.1</td>
<td>43.2</td>
<td>36.3</td>
<td>25.7**</td>
<td>20.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75+</td>
<td>43.4</td>
<td>28.1</td>
<td>23.0</td>
<td>100.0**</td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>40.2</td>
<td>27.7</td>
<td>24.4**</td>
<td>20.1**</td>
<td>18.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All ages</td>
<td>53.0</td>
<td>38.2</td>
<td>29.3</td>
<td>30.5**</td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>48.7**</td>
<td>37.9</td>
<td>31.4</td>
<td>23.1</td>
<td>20.6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Overweight is defined as ≥ 27.8 kg/m² for men and ≥ 27.3 kg/m² for women.
** Based on samples of fewer than 30 persons.
A.4. Annotated Bibliography of Studies Specifically Designed To Achieve Weight Reduction in Special Populations.

The following annotations describe weight reduction studies in special populations or situations. From the total number of studies identified in which minorities or other special populations were included, the studies listed below are those for which the treatment or intervention program included design features specifically geared to the needs of a minority population or other special population of interest. Thus, these studies provide examples of ways in which researchers or service practitioners have attempted to adapt conventional weight reduction approaches to the needs of diverse client groups. The annotations highlight the published reports with respect to the setting and the nature of the program. Study results are not included because relatively few studies are randomized controlled trials, several are pilot studies or program descriptions, and many do not lend themselves to a clear evaluation of success rates. Boldface material indicates the particular population or situation studied.


A randomized controlled trial conducted at an urban hospital in Washington, DC. The intervention group was offered 12 weekly group sessions, 1 individual session, and 6 biweekly group sessions; the usual care group was offered one class and two informational mailings. Participants were recruited through various clinics and through community outreach, including announcements in newsletters and church bulletins, flyers distributed at clinics and churches, and presentations at community gatherings. Program materials depicted African-American individuals, families, and community settings and reflected language, social values, and situations relevant to older Americans or African-Americans. All guidance about foods and recipes was based on types of foods and flavorings characteristic in African-American communities. Recipes were provided by participants and used in direct instruction. Ample time was allowed for the participants to discuss and work through dietary adherence issues unique to their social contexts (e.g., church meals).


A 10-week physical activity program designed for obese Latino women in San Diego, California. Volunteers were recruited through flyers that were distributed in a low-income community medical clinic, the local church, English as a Second Language classes, and the local grocery store. Sessions focused on self-change behavior, nutrition education, gaining support from a “buddy,” and an exercise component. The sessions were led by a bicultural, bilingual physician.


A study that compared three groups of obese Mexican American women in Texas, ages 18 to 45 years. Families were recruited through media promotion and local contacts within the community, primarily through churches and health agencies. The comparison group received a bilingual manual with information on nutrition, exercise, and behavioral principles for weight loss. The manual was designed to reflect the cultural values of the population. The comparison group also received a cookbook with recipes for fat-modified traditional Mexican American foods. The individual group received the same printed materials and attended weekly classes led by bilingual registered dietitians. Classes provid-
ed individual and group activities. The family group received the materials and attended classes that emphasized a family-oriented approach to making changes in eating habits and exercise behavior; spouses and children were invited. Family group members received a modified version of the manual with additional information on partner support and parenting skills to encourage family changes in eating and exercise behaviors. Spouses were encouraged to attend classes with the participants, and separate classes were held for preschool-age children.

**Daniel EL. A multi-intervention weight management program for low-income rural women.** J Am Diet Assoc 1989;89:1310-1311. 633

A pilot weight management program involving low-income rural women who were enrolled in the Special Supplemental Food Program for Women, Infants and Children (WIC) and/or food stamp programs in rural western New York State. The program included five biweekly sessions that focused on nutrition, behavior modification, aerobic exercise, and stress management. Handouts were designed for low-literacy or non-English-speaking adults, and plastic food models were used to discuss serving sizes and portion control. Suggestions for healthful eating were based on WIC foods whenever possible. Exercise focused on aerobic dance because it can be done at home with no special equipment or child care needed and can be adapted to almost any kind of music.

**Domel SB, Alford BB, Cattlett HN, Gench BE. Weight control for black women.** J Am Diet Assoc 1992;92(3):346-348. 634

A program for black women with low educational levels at four literacy program sites in economically disadvantaged areas of Dallas, Texas. The program consisted of 11 weekly sessions taught by a registered dietitian and included nutrition education, behavior modification, active learner participation, and self-responsibility. It stressed practical, lifelong methods for weight control. Materials were geared toward low-literacy participants; for example, a green traffic light was used for low-calorie foods, and a yellow traffic light was used for high-calorie foods. Shopping tips included ways to save money and decrease calories; audiocassettes included a radio show format with disk jockey, guest speaker, and “phoned-in” questions from listeners.


A 10-session pilot weight control program for Hispanic women in Dallas, Texas. Modifications to fit the Hispanic culture included adding appropriate ethnic foods and recipes, stressing the importance of health for the entire family, and reformatting some of the materials. To this end, some of the pamphlets were changed to a comic book format, and audiocassettes were changed from a radio show format to a dialog between two *comadres*. The program was taught in Spanish by a bilingual Hispanic dietitian at a local church. Handouts were available in English and Spanish. Participants were recruited through articles in Spanish and English newspapers, public service announcements on Spanish radio stations, church bulletins, and various flyers. A promotional event was also held at each site 1 week before the program began.


A 15-week behavioral weight loss program for obese, moderately retarded adults that included 10 weeks of treatment and 5 weeks of maintenance. The program was conducted in the sheltered workshop where all of the participants worked, and participants were given time off during the day to attend sessions. Picture materials were developed to facilitate the learning and
practice of the behavioral weight loss strategies; no reading skills were required. All participants in the study lived with their parents, and all parents were instructed in the behavioral weight reduction techniques and the forms so that they could provide guidance and support to their child at home during the course of the program. Daily homework assignments were given so that participants could practice behavioral strategies outside of the training setting. Bimonthly phone calls to the parents were made to discuss their child’s progress and difficulties in implementing behavior techniques. To encourage attendance, at each session, participants were entered into a drawing to win small prizes, and awards were also given for each pound of weight lost. Follow-up was conducted for 1 year.


A 10-session, self-management training program designed for persons older than 60 years of age. Recruitment was conducted through local diabetes care professionals, presentations, mailings, newsletters of local and State diabetes associations, presentations at health fairs, flyers distributed at grocery stores and pharmacies, and local television and radio advertising. The program was offered at no cost, and participants were provided glucose testing materials and a coupon for a pair of walking shoes. Sessions were held during daylight hours in well-known, accessible, and pleasant facilities that earlier focus group participants thought were most convenient. In response to focus group feedback, the program focused on dietary and exercise self-care behaviors. The group was led by an interdisciplinary team of psychologists, a registered dietitian, certified exercise leaders, and other educators. Group meetings were kept small and focused on developing individualized plans to overcome barriers to adherence. Participants chose the specific self-care area on which they wished to focus. Follow-up was conducted for 6 months.


A 2-year exercise intervention in the Zuni Indian community in western New Mexico. Participants were recruited through personal invitation, recommendation from the medical staff, and a general community advertising campaign. Community events such as foot races were offered throughout the year, supported by community agencies and local businesses. The program was coordinated by a health educator, two health education assistants, and 48 Zuni Indians who were trained in exercise and group leadership.


A 10-week weight loss program for obese, low-income African-American women ages 40 to 64 years in Boston, New York, Houston, and Los Angeles. The program focused on diet, exercise, and behavior modification using information obtained from interviews of obese African-American women concerning these issues. Participants were placed on a culturally appropriate, low-fat diet, including two free meal replacement shakes. Lactaid was provided to those participants who were lactose intolerant. Group sessions involving goal-setting, problem-solving, and role-playing were led by a female African-American nutritionist. All educational materials, recipes, and menu plans were reviewed by minority health professionals to ensure cultural appropriateness.

The Trials of Nonpharmacologic Intervention in the Elderly (TONE) was a randomized comparison of weight reduction, sodium reduction, and combined weight/sodium reduction programs versus a no-treatment control group conducted in four university research centers located in Maryland, North Carolina, New Jersey, and Tennessee. Education and counseling addressed relevant nutrition knowledge and behavior change skills. Contacts were weekly for 4 months, biweekly for 4 months, and then monthly. The study addressed challenges that an older population faces, such as literacy limitations, and used oral and visual examples to explain new concepts; concrete, step-by-step instruction; limited use of complex sentences; and minimal need for abstract reasoning. Only a small amount of information was given at one time to prevent overload. Easy-to-read typeface was used, as well as generous use of graphics. Physical changes of aging (e.g., impaired hearing, vision, or memory and speed of absorbing new information) were addressed by using simultaneous oral and visual presentation and seating and room arrangements to accommodate those who wished to be close to the speaker. Large typeface was used in all visual materials, and the room was arranged to avoid glare. Graphics and text references were chosen to depict older persons, and counseling was geared to build on previously learned nutrition practices, preferences, and food-related attitudes.


A behaviorally oriented weight control program offering eight weekly diet counseling/exercise sessions. The program was a component of the Baltimore Church High Blood Pressure Program (CHBPP), which encompassed black churches in the Baltimore, Maryland, black community. Recruitment was through CHBPP networks, including lay volunteers from each congregation who had also been trained as blood pressure measurement specialists. Advertisement of the program was by word of mouth as well as by presentations at meetings of the ministerial alliance. Announcements were also placed in church bulletins. The meetings were held on church property, often following other scheduled church activities such as choir practice. The group format emphasized an un rushed, supportive, relaxed environment and included a diet component led by a registered dietitian and an exercise component consisting of low-impact aerobics.


A 10-week exercise and nutrition intervention targeted to obese residents of a black urban community in Atlanta between the ages of 18 and 59 years. Free transportation and child care were provided to encourage participation. Classes on nutrition, community resources, and exercise were offered, including low-impact aerobic dance, water exercises, and walking. Home visits by a public health educator were planned to build family support and alleviate spousal concerns. Participants were asked to comment on the program, and their suggestions were incorporated into the special interest sessions. Participation was monitored, and absentees were called and encouraged to attend the next session.

A randomized, 14-week, church-based weight loss program targeting urban, obese African-American women. The program was developed using locally conducted focus groups with the target population and administered by trained lay facilitators recruited from urban churches. Facilitators assisted participants in identifying and providing solutions for their dietary problems. Aspects of the program included emphasizing weight loss for general well-being and health rather than improved physical appearance, achieving culturally appropriate body size, and using ethnic foods and food combinations.

McNabb WL, Quinn MT, Rosing L. Weight loss program for inner-city black women with non-insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus: PATHWAYS. J Am Diet Assoc 1993;93(1):75-77. 643

An 18-week weight loss program, including 12 core weekly sessions that focused on nutrition information and behavior modification and 6 follow-up or “reinforcement” sessions that provided support and strategies for overcoming obstacles the women faced along the way. The program was designed to deal with the obstacles obese, inner-city black women face in trying to exercise and lose weight and was partly based on feedback from a sample of women who were interviewed before the study was designed. An expert panel composed of local minority health care professionals reviewed program materials, which were written at a low-literacy level. Participants were provided with information about foods, including ethnic and regional foods such as greens, salt pork, and ham hocks.


A biweekly, 10-session nutrition, diabetes, and weight loss education program with 30 black adults in rural west Alabama. The program used self-help groups to assist participants with diabetes management by providing peer interaction and support. Groups were led by a public health nutritionist, nutrition graduate student, and a lay facilitator chosen from each group. Topics included definition of diabetes, meal planning, diet modification to reduce complications, and weight control.


A randomized, controlled trial conducted at a hospital in central London. The intervention focused on improving glucose and weight control in low-income, low-literacy obese patients with non-insulin dependent diabetes. The trial excluded those patients who were taking insulin and patients who were older than 70 years of age. Of the 120 patients recruited, 55 percent were female, and 49 percent were West Indian black. Patients within the intervention group participated in monthly group sessions that included materials specifically designed for diabetic patients with low literacy or monthly group sessions without low-literacy materials. Low-literacy sessions used standardized audiovisual lessons and written materials and included common West Indian foods.


A 12-week weight management program with lifestyle change as its central focus (n=12) located at a neighborhood YMCA. Recruiting was conducted through articles and announcements...
in local newspapers and church bulletins. The weekly sessions lasted 2 hours, with the first hour devoted to lectures on nutrition, behavioral change, and weight loss; the second hour involved exercise, which included endurance exercises and walking.


Under the premise that, historically, Native Hawaiians have been thin due to their traditional diet, a diet intervention for Native Hawaiians was conducted with traditional Hawaiian foods on the western coast of the island of Oahu. Recruitment was conducted through newspaper advertisements, articles, flyers, and a public presentation about the program. The selection of food for the program consisted of foods available in Hawaii before Western contact, such as taro, poi, sweet potatoes, yams, breadfruit, greens, fruit, seaweed, fish, and chicken. Foods were prepared in the traditional manner. Breakfast was eaten together, and cultural or health education sessions were conducted during the group dinner session.


An 8-week intervention for obese, low-income black mothers (n=10) of children younger than 3 years was conducted at the Parent Child Development Center of the Urban League in New Orleans, Louisiana. Aerobic exercise with soul music was incorporated into the sessions because it was thought to appeal to the population and because dancing can be done safely in the home with no special equipment. Child care was provided for the mothers during the sessions.

4 Appendix IV. Obesity and Sleep Apnea
Obstructive sleep apnea is defined as an absence of breathing during sleep. Currently, it is recognized that sleep apnea is part of a continuum from health to disease. 649, 650 Apnea is currently defined as cessation of airflow for at least 10 seconds and is characterized as either central (if no respiratory effort occurs), obstructive (if continued effort is noted), or mixed (if both central and obstructive components are present). 651-653

Apnea is associated with either a fall in oxyhemoglobin desaturation or an arousal from sleep. Hypopneas, which are defined as partial reductions in airflow associated with falls in oxygen saturation or arousals from sleep, are also recorded.

The sleep apnea syndrome has been clinically defined as recurrent apnea or hypopnea associated with clinical impairment usually manifested as increased daytime sleepiness or altered cardiopulmonary function. In general, the average number of episodes of apnea and hypopnea per hour are reported as an index (AHI) or as a respiratory disturbance index (RDI). Classically, an AHI of greater than five episodes per hour has been the definition of the presence of the sleep apnea syndrome. 651, 652 Other commonly used cutoff points are an AHI of 10 or 15 episodes per hour or an overnight total of 30 apneic-hypopneic episodes. 653

There are several correlates of sleep apnea. It is well recognized that it is more prevalent in males, although the difference is less pronounced in population-based studies than in laboratory-based studies. 20 Some studies have suggested that the prevalence of sleep apnea in women increases after menopause. Snoring also correlates with sleep apnea, increasing up to late middle age and decreasing thereafter. 20, 282, 654, 655 The other major correlate of sleep apnea is obesity 20, 653, 654, 656 in both men and women. In general, women have to be significantly more obese than men for the clinical syndrome to be apparent. 657

At present, no published epidemiologic studies
have examined the relationship between race and sleep apnea. Given the high prevalence of obesity among specific populations and minorities, sleep apnea may be highly prevalent in these groups.

The major pathophysiologic consequences of severe sleep apnea include severe arterial hypoxemia, recurrent arousals from sleep, increased sympathetic tone, pulmonary and systemic hypertension, and cardiac arrhythmias. These phenomena may result in acute hemodynamic and chronic structural change in the coronary arteries, possibly associated with relative myocardial ischemia, rupture of atheromatous plaques, and increased risk for thrombosis at the site of any unstable plaque. Similar mechanisms acting in the cerebrovascular system may be involved in an increased risk of stroke. Finally, the sympathetic tone may be associated with hypertension as well as increased platelet aggregability.

The primary goal for treatment of individuals with sleep apnea is to reduce the severity of the respiratory events that are associated with oxyhemoglobin desaturation and arousal from sleep. There are only two cohort studies in clinic-based populations that demonstrate a significant reduction in cardiovascular mortality among sleep apnea patients who are treated progressively compared to those who are treated conservatively. However, both of these studies were retrospective and suffered from a significant bias of ascertainment.

The evidence that treatment of obesity ameliorates obstructive sleep apnea is reasonably well established. Although the studies are small, both surgical and medical approaches to weight loss have been associated with a consistent but variable reduction in the number of respiratory events, as well as improvement in oxygenation. In general, surgical interventions, which have included a gastric bypass or jejunostomy, have been reserved for people who are severely obese. While this approach to weight reduction was commonly used in patients with severe obstructive sleep apnea, they recently have been abandoned because of complications and side effects. However, the use of surgical gastric procedures has been successful in improving sleep apnea in a number of studies.

On the other hand, weight reduction has been associated with comparable reduction in the severity of sleep apnea, as well as improved evidence of renal function and hypertension. Both medical and surgical studies have demonstrated that as little as 10-percent weight reduction is associated with a more than 50-percent reduction in the severity of sleep apnea. Moreover, more recent data suggest a possible “threshold” effect that is directly related to the collapsibility of the upper airway. Those individuals who demonstrate a minimally collapsible upper airway apparently achieve a greater effect for the same percentage of weight reduction.

Finally, there is evidence that standard treatments for sleep apnea do reduce specific cardiovascular risk factors. Specifically, the most commonly employed treatment, continuous positive airway pressure, has been shown to reduce waking arresting carbon dioxide and reduced heart rate, and pulmonary artery pressure decreased hematocrit and improved ventricular ejection fraction. Other standard surgical approaches that have been employed to widen the upper airway have been shown to reduce the severity of the apnea, but there are no data examining the associated cardiovascular risk factors. No studies have specifically examined the effects of treatment of sleep apnea on obesity, but it generally has been noted that all nonweight loss treatments of sleep apnea have not been associated with any significant weight loss other than might be accrued from surgical interventions that temporarily reduce the ability to eat in the immediate postoperative period.
APPENDIX V. BODY MASS INDEX—HOW TO MEASURE OBESITY

Body mass index (BMI) is usually measured with the Quetelet index as follows: weight divided by height squared (W/H^2 [kg/m^2]).

To use the table, find the appropriate height in the left-hand column. Move across to a given weight. The number at the top of the column is the BMI at that height and weight. Pounds have been rounded off.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Height (inches)</th>
<th>Body Weight (pounds)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>58</td>
<td>91 96 100 105 110 115 119 124 129 134 138 143 148 153 158 162 167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>97 102 107 112 118 123 128 133 138 143 148 153 158 163 168 174 179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61</td>
<td>100 106 111 116 122 127 132 137 143 148 153 158 164 169 174 180 185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
<td>104 109 115 120 126 131 136 142 147 153 158 164 169 175 180 186 191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td>107 113 118 124 130 135 141 146 152 158 163 169 175 180 186 191 197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64</td>
<td>110 116 122 128 134 140 145 151 157 163 169 174 180 186 192 197 204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65</td>
<td>114 120 126 132 138 144 150 156 162 168 174 180 186 192 198 204 210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66</td>
<td>118 124 130 136 142 148 155 161 167 173 179 186 192 198 204 210 216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>67</td>
<td>121 127 134 140 146 153 159 166 172 178 185 191 198 204 211 217 223</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68</td>
<td>125 131 138 144 151 158 164 171 177 184 190 197 203 210 216 223 230</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69</td>
<td>128 135 142 149 155 162 169 176 182 189 196 203 209 216 223 230 236</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>132 139 146 153 160 167 174 181 188 195 202 209 216 222 229 236 243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71</td>
<td>136 143 150 157 165 172 179 186 193 200 208 215 222 229 236 243 250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72</td>
<td>140 147 154 162 169 177 184 191 199 206 213 221 228 235 242 250 258</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73</td>
<td>144 151 159 166 174 182 189 197 204 212 219 227 235 242 250 257 265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74</td>
<td>148 155 163 171 179 186 194 202 210 218 225 233 241 249 256 264 272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75</td>
<td>152 160 168 176 184 192 200 208 216 224 232 240 248 256 264 272 279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76</td>
<td>156 164 172 180 189 197 205 213 221 230 238 246 254 263 271 279 287</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
To use the table, find the appropriate height in the left-hand column. Move across to a given weight. The number at the top of the column is the BMI at that height and weight. Pounds have been rounded off.758
VI. A.1. Shopping—What To Look For

A.1.a. Low-Calorie Shopping List
Make a shopping list. Include the items you need for your menus and any low-calorie basics you need to restock in your kitchen.

Dairy case
- Low-fat (1%) or fat-free (skim) milk
- Low-fat or reduced-fat cottage cheese
- Fat-free cottage cheese
- Low-fat cheeses
- Low-fat or nonfat yogurt
- Light or diet margarine (tub, squeeze or spray)
- Reduced-fat or fat-free sour cream
- Fat-free cream cheese
- Eggs/Egg substitutes
  - ________________________________
  - ________________________________
  - ________________________________

Breads, muffins, rolls
- Bread, bagels, pita bread
- English muffins
- Yeast breads (whole wheat, rye, pumpernickel, multi-grain, raisin)
- Corn tortillas (not fried)
- Low-fat flour tortillas
- Fat-free biscuit mix
- Rice crackers
- Challah
- ________________________________
- ________________________________

Cereals, crackers, rice, noodles, and pasta
- Plain cereal, dry or cooked
- Saltines, soda crackers (low sodium or unsalted tops)
- Graham crackers
- Other low-fat crackers
- ________________________________
- ________________________________
- ________________________________
- Rice (brown, white, etc.)
Chapter 7: Appendices

- Pasta (noodles, spaghetti)
- Bulgur, couscous, kasha
- Potato mixes (made without fat)
- Rice mixes (made without fat)
- Other
- Wheat mixes
- Tabouli grain salad
- Hominy
- Polenta
- Polvillo
- Hominy grits
- Quinoa
- Millet
- Aramanth
- Oatmeal

Meat case
- White meat chicken and turkey (skin-off)
- Fish (not battered)
- Beef, round or sirloin
- Extra lean ground beef such as ground round
- Pork tenderloin
- 95% fat-free lunch meats or low-fat deli meats
- Meat equivalents:
  - Tofu (or bean curd)
  - Beans (see bean list)
  - Eggs/egg substitutes (see dairy list)

Fruit (fresh, canned, and frozen)

Fresh Fruit:
- Apples
- Bananas
- Peaches
- Oranges
- Pears
- Grapes
- Grapefruit
- Apricot
- Dried Fruits
- Cherries
- Plums
- Melons
- Lemons
- Limes
- Plantains
- Mango
- Papaya

Exotic Fresh Fruit:
- Kiwi
- Olives
- Figs
- Quinces
- Currants
- Persimmons
- Pomegranates
- Anon
- Caimito
- Chirimoya
- Guanabana
- Mamey
- Papayas
- Zapote
- Guava
- Starfruit
- Ugli fruit
- Dried pickled plums
- Litchee nuts
- Winter melons
- ________________________
- ________________________

*Canned Fruit (in juice or water):*
- Canned pineapple
- Applesauce
- Other canned fruits (mixed or plain)
- ________________________

*Frozen Fruits (without added sugar):*
- Frozen blueberries
- Frozen raspberries
- Frozen 100% fruit juice
- ________________________

*Dried Fruit:*
- Raisins/dried fruit (these tend to be higher in calories than fresh fruit)

*Vegetables (fresh, canned, frozen)*

**Fresh Vegetables:**
- Broccoli
- Peas
- Corn
- Cauliflower
- Squash
- Green Beans
- Green Leafy Vegetables
- Spinach
- Lettuce
- Cabbage
- Artichokes
- Cucumber
- Asparagus
- Mushrooms
- Carrots or celery
- Onions
- Potatoes
- Tomatoes
- Green peppers
- Chilies
- Tomatillos
- ________________________

*Canned Vegetables: (low sodium or no salt added)*
- Canned tomatoes
- Tomato sauce or pasta
- Other canned vegetables
- Canned vegetable soup, reduced sodium

*Frozen Vegetables: (without added fats)*
- Frozen broccoli
- Frozen spinach
- Frozen mixed medley, etc.
- Frozen yucca
- ________________________

*Exotic Fresh Vegetables*
- Okra
Chapter 7: Appendices

- Dandelions
- Eggplant
- Grape leaves
- Mustard greens
- Kale
- Leeks
- Boniato
- Chayote
- Borenjena
- Plaintain
- Cassava
- Prickly pear cactus
- Bamboo shoots
- Chinese celery
- Water chestnuts
- Bok choy
- Burdock root
- Napa cabbage
- Taro
- Seaweed
- Bean sprouts
- Amaranth
- Choy sum
- Calabacita
- Sea vegetables
- Rhubarb

Beans and legumes (if canned, no salt added)
- Lentils
- Black beans
- Pinto beans
- Blackeyed peas
- Fava beans
- Mung beans
- Italian white beans
- Great white northern beans
- Chickpeas (garbanzo beans)
- Dried beans, peas, and lentils (without flavoring packets)
- Canned bean soup

Baking items
- Flour
- Sugar
- Imitation butter (flakes or buds)
- Nonstick cooking spray
- Canned evaporated milk—fat free (skim) or reduced-fat (2%)
- Nonfat dry milk powder
- Cocoa powder, unsweetened
- Baking powder
- Baking soda
- Cornstarch
- Unflavored gelatin
- Gelatin, any flavor (reduced calorie)
- Pudding mixes (reduced calorie)
- Angel food cake mix
- Other low-fat mixes
- Other

- Other

- Other

---

144
Frozen foods
- Frozen fish fillets—unbreaded
- Egg substitute
- Frozen 100 percent fruit juices (no sugar added)
- Frozen fruits (no sugar added)
- Frozen vegetables (plain)
- Other frozen foods
  - __________________________

Condiments, sauces, seasonings, and spreads
- Low-fat or nonfat salad dressings
- Mustard (Dijon, etc.)
- Catsup
- Barbecue sauce
- Other low-fat sauces
  - __________________________
  - __________________________
- Jam, jelly, or honey
- Spices __________________________
  - __________________________
- Flavored vinegars
- Hoisin sauce, plum sauce
- Salsa or picante sauce
- Canned green chilies
- Soy sauce (low sodium)
- Bouillon cubes/granules (low sodium)
- Other
  - __________________________

Beverages
- No-calorie drink mixes
- Reduced-calorie juices
- Unsweetened iced tea
- Carbonated water
- Water
Low-Calorie Shopping List

We live in a fast-moving world. To reduce the time you spend in the kitchen you can improve your organization by using a shopping list and keeping a well-stocked kitchen. Shop for quick low-fat food items, and fill your kitchen cupboards with a supply of low-calorie basics.

Read labels as you shop. Pay attention to the serving size and the servings per container. All labels list total calories in a serving size of the product. **Compare the total calories in the product you choose with others like it; choose the one that is lowest in calories.** Below is a label that identifies important information.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nutrition Facts</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serving Size 1 cup (228g)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Servings Per Container 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Amount Per Serving</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calories 250 Calories from Fat 110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>% Daily Value*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Fat 12g 18%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saturated Fat 3g 15%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cholesterol 30mg 10%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sodium 470mg 20%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Carbohydrate 31g 10%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dietary Fiber 0g 0%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sugars 5g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protein 5g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vitamin A 4% • Vitamin C 2%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calcium 20% • Iron 4%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Percent Daily Values are based on a 2,000 calorie diet. Your daily values may be higher or lower depending on your calorie needs:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Calories:</th>
<th>2,000</th>
<th>2,500</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Total Fat</td>
<td>Less than 65g</td>
<td>80g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sat Fat</td>
<td>Less than 20g</td>
<td>25g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cholesterol</td>
<td>Less than 300mg</td>
<td>300mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sodium</td>
<td>Less than 2,400mg</td>
<td>2,400mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Carbohydrate</td>
<td>Less than 300g</td>
<td>375g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dietary Fiber</td>
<td>25g</td>
<td>30g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calories per gram:</td>
<td>Fat 9 • Carbohydrates 4 • Protein 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- The “% Daily Value” shows you how much of the recommended food provides in one serving, if you eat 2,000 calories a day. For example, one serving of this food gives you 18 percent of your total fat recommendation.

- Here you can see the recommended daily amount for each nutrient for two calorie levels. If you eat a 2,000 calorie diet, you should be eating less than 65 grams of fat and less than 20 grams of saturated fat. If you eat 2,500 calories a day, you should eat less than 80 grams of fat and 25 grams of saturated fat. Your daily amounts may vary higher or lower depending on the calories you eat.
VI. A.1.b. Low-Calorie, Lower-Fat Alternatives

These low-calorie alternatives provide new ideas for old favorites. When making a food choice, remember to consider vitamins and minerals. Some foods provide most of their calories from sugar and fat but give you few if any vitamins and minerals.

This guide is not meant to be an exhaustive list. We stress reading labels to find out just how many calories are in the specific products you decide to buy.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HIGHER-FAT FOODS</th>
<th>LOWER-FAT FOODS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dairy Products:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>q Evaporated whole milk</td>
<td>q Evaporated fat-free (skim) or reduced-fat (2%) milk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>q Whole milk</td>
<td>q Low-fat (1%), reduced-fat (2%), or fat-free (skim) milk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>q Ice cream</td>
<td>q Sorbet, sherbet, low-fat or fat-free frozen yogurt, or ice milk (check label for calorie content)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>q Whipping cream</td>
<td>q Imitation whipped cream (made with fat-free [skim] milk) or low-fat vanilla yogurt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>q Sour cream</td>
<td>q Plain low-fat yogurt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>q Cream cheese</td>
<td>q Neufchatel or “light” cream cheese or fat-free cream cheese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>q Cheese (Cheddar, Swiss, Jack)</td>
<td>q Reduced-calorie cheese, low-calorie processed cheeses, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>q American cheese</td>
<td>q Fat-free cheese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>q Regular (4%) cottage cheese</td>
<td>q Fat-free American cheese or other types of fat-free cheeses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>q Whole milk mozzarella cheese</td>
<td>q Low-fat (1%) or reduced-fat (2%) cottage cheese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>q Whole milk ricotta cheese</td>
<td>q Part-skim milk, low-moisture mozzarella cheese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>q Coffee cream (½ and ⅓) or nondairy creamer (liquid, powder)</td>
<td>q Part-skim milk ricotta cheese</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cereals, Grains, and Pasta</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>q Ramen noodles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>q Pasta with white sauce (alfredo)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>q Pasta with cheese sauce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>q Granola</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIGHER-FAT FOODS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coldcuts or lunch meats (bologna, salami, liverwurst, etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hot dogs (regular)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bacon or sausage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regular ground beef</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chicken or turkey with skin; duck, or goose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oil-packed tuna</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beef (chuck, rib, brisket)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pork (spareribs, untrimmed loin)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frozen breaded fish or fried fish (homemade or commercial)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whole eggs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frozen TV dinners (containing more than 13 grams of fat per serving)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chorizo sausage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Baked Goods**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Croissants, brioches, etc.</th>
<th>Hard french rolls or soft brown ’n serve rolls</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Donuts, sweet rolls, muffins, scones, or pastries</td>
<td>English muffins, bagels, reduced-fat or fat-free muffins or scones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Party crackers</td>
<td>Low-fat crackers (choose lower in sodium)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saltine or soda crackers (choose lower in sodium)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cake (pound, chocolate, yellow)</td>
<td>Cake (angel food, white, gingerbread)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cookies</td>
<td>Reduced-fat or fat-free cookies (graham crackers, ginger snaps, fig bars) (compare calorie level)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>HIGHER-FAT FOODS</strong></td>
<td><strong>LOWER-FAT FOODS</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nuts</td>
<td>Popcorn (air-popped or light microwave), fruits, vegetables</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ice cream, e.g., cones or bars</td>
<td>Frozen yogurt, frozen fruit or chocolate pudding bars</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Custards or puddings (made with whole milk)</td>
<td>Puddings (made with skim milk)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Fats, Oils, and Salad Dressings**

- Regular margarine or butter
- Regular mayonnaise
- Regular salad dressings
- Butter or margarine on toast or bread
- Oils, shortening, or lard

- Light spread margarines, diet margarine, or whipped butter, tub or squeeze bottle
- Light or diet mayonnaise or mustard
- Reduced-calorie or fat-free salad dressings, lemon juice, or plain or herb flavored or wine vinegar
- Jelly, jam, or honey on bread or toast
- Nonstick cooking spray for stir-frying or sautéing

**Miscellaneous**

- Canned cream soups
- Canned beans and franks
- Gravy (homemade with fat and/or milk)
- Fudge sauce
- Avocado on sandwiches
- Guacamole dip or refried beans with lard

- Canned broth-based soups
- Canned baked beans in tomato sauce
- Gravy mixes made with water or homemade with the fat skimmed off and fat-free milk
- Chocolate syrup
- Cucumber slices or lettuce leaves
- Salsa
Chapter 7: Appendices

A calorie is a calorie is a calorie…whether it comes from fat or carbohydrate. Anything eaten in excess can lead to weight gain. You can lose weight by eating less calories and by increasing your physical activity. Reducing the amount of fat and saturated fat that you eat is one easy way to limit your overall calorie intake. However, eating fat-free or reduced-fat foods isn’t always the answer to weight loss. For example, if you eat twice as many fat-free cookies as regular cookies you may not have reduced your overall calorie intake. The following list of foods and their fat-free varieties will show you that just because a product is fat-free, it doesn’t mean that it is “calorie-free.” And, calories do count!

### VI. A.1.c. Fat-Free Versus Regular—Calorie Comparison

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fat-Free or Reduced Fat</th>
<th>Calories</th>
<th>Regular</th>
<th>Calories</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Reduced-Fat Peanut Butter, 2 tablespoons</td>
<td>190</td>
<td>Regular Peanut Butter, 2 tablespoons</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cookies:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reduced-Fat Chocolate Chip Cookie, 1 cookie</td>
<td>128</td>
<td>Regular Chocolate Chip Cookie, 1 cookie</td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fat-Free Fig Cookie, 1 cookie</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>Fig Cookie, 1 cookie</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ice Cream:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Premium Nonfat Frozen Yogurt ½ cup</td>
<td>190</td>
<td>Regular Ice Cream ½ cup</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Premium Reduced-Fat Ice Cream ½ cup</td>
<td>190</td>
<td>Regular Ice Cream ½ cup</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fat-Free Caramel Topping, 2 tablespoons</td>
<td>130</td>
<td>Butterscotch Caramel Topping, 2 tablespoons</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reduced-Fat Granola Cereal, ½ cup</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>Granola Cereal, ½ cup</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reduced-Fat Croissant Roll, 1 roll</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>Regular Croissant Roll, 1 roll</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baked Tortilla Chips, 1 ounce</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>Regular Tortilla Chips, 1 ounce</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reduced-Fat Breakfast Bar, 1 bar</td>
<td>140</td>
<td>Breakfast Bar, 1 bar</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Calcium is not just for growing children. It is an important mineral that adults also need to keep their bones and teeth strong and their muscles functioning. Many people do not eat enough calcium everyday. The following is a list of good sources of calcium and tips on how to include more calcium in your diet everyday.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source</th>
<th>Calcium (milligrams)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Milk</strong> (1 cup)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whole</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2% reduced-fat</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1%* low-fat</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fat free*</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Yogurt</strong> (1 cup)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plain, low-fat</td>
<td>415</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flavored, low-fat</td>
<td>315</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plain, fat free</td>
<td>315</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cheese</strong> (1 ounce)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reduced-fat Cheddar*</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>American</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swiss Cheese</td>
<td>270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mozzarella, part-skim</td>
<td>185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cottage Cheese</strong> (⅛ cup)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2% reduced-fat</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calcium fortified cottage cheese</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ice Cream</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regular, ½ cup</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low-fat, ½ cup</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Frozen Yogurt</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low-fat, ¾ cup</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Beans</strong>, dried cooked, 1 cup</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Salmon</strong>, with bones, 3 ounces</td>
<td>205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tofu</strong>, processed with calcium sulfate, ½ cup</td>
<td>435</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Spinach</strong>, fresh cooked</td>
<td>244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Turnip Greens</strong>, fresh cooked, 1 cup</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Kale</strong>, fresh cooked</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Broccoli</strong>, fresh cooked</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Waffle</strong>, 7” diameter</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pancakes</strong>, (2) 4” diameter</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pizza</strong>, with vegetables, ⅛ 12” pie</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Low-fat and nonfat varieties of foods are still good sources of calcium.
## Calcium Requirements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Women</th>
<th>Men</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>19-24</td>
<td>1,200 mg</td>
<td>1,200 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25-50</td>
<td>1,000 mg</td>
<td>800 mg</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Tips for Fitting in Calcium**

- Eat cereal with fat-free milk. Try adding fresh fruit.
- Drink an extra glass of milk every day; try calcium-fortified milk.
- Spread calcium-fortified cottage cheese* on crackers or bagel. Add fresh fruit.
- Drink calcium-fortified orange juice.*
- Blend a yogurt smoothie with low-fat or fat-free yogurt and milk, and fresh or frozen fruit.
- Make instant pudding with low-fat or fat-free milk.
- Choose frozen yogurt for dessert instead of cake or cookies.
- Add a slice of low-fat or fat-free cheese to sandwiches.
- Substitute calcium fortified tofu in stir-fries for chicken, shrimp, or beef.
- Sauté greens (kale, bok choy, collard greens) in cooking spray and lemon juice and herbs.

*Read food labels for products with added calcium
VI. A.2. Food Preparation—What to Do

Low-Calorie, Low-Fat Cooking/Serving Methods
Cooking low-calorie, low-fat dishes may not take a long time, but best intentions can be lost with the addition of butter or other added fats at the table. It is important to learn how certain ingredients can add unwanted calories and fat to low-fat dishes—making them no longer lower in calories and lower in fat! The following list provides examples of lower fat-cooking methods and tips on how to serve your low-fat dishes.

Low-Fat Cooking Methods
These cooking methods tend to be lower in fat:

- Bake
- Broil
- Microwave
- Roast—for vegetables and/or chicken without skin
- Steam
- Lightly stir-fry or sauté in cooking spray, small amounts of vegetable oil, or reduced sodium broth
- Grill seafood, chicken or vegetables

How To Save Calories and Fat
Look at the following examples for how to save calories and fat when preparing and serving foods. You might be surprised at how easy it is!

- Two tablespoons of butter on a baked potato can add an extra 200 calories and 22 grams of fat! However, ¼ cup salsa only adds 18 calories and no fat!
- Two tablespoons of regular clear Italian salad dressing will add an extra 136 calories and 14 grams of fat. Reduced fat Italian dressing only adds 30 calories and 2 grams of fat!

Try These Low-Fat Flavorings—added during preparation or at the table

- Herbs—oregano, basil, cilantro, thyme, parsley, sage, or rosemary
- Spices—cinnamon, nutmeg, pepper, or paprika
- Reduced-fat or fat-free salad dressing
- Mustard
- Catsup
- Fat-free or reduced-fat mayonnaise
- Fat-free or reduced-fat sour cream
- Fat-free or reduced-fat yogurt
- Reduced sodium soy sauce
- Salsa
- Lemon or lime juice
- Vinegar
- Horseradish
- Fresh ginger
- Sprinkle of butter flavor (not made with real butter)
- Red pepper flakes
- Sprinkle of parmesan cheese (stronger flavor than most cheese)
- Sodium-free salt substitute
- Jelly or fruit preserves on toast or bagels
VI. A.3. Dining Out—How to Choose

**Vi. A.3.a. General Tips for Healthy Dining Out**

Whether or not you’re trying to lose weight, you can eat healthy when dining out or bringing in food, if you know how. The following tips will help you move toward healthier eating as you limit your calories, as well as fat, saturated fat, cholesterol, and sodium when eating out.

**You Are the Customer -**
- Ask for what you want! Most restaurants will honor your requests.
- Ask questions! Don’t be intimidated by the menu - your server will be able to tell you how foods are prepared or suggest substitutions on the menu.
- If you wish to reduce portion sizes - try ordering appetizers as your main meal.

**General Tips:** Limiting your calories and fat can be easy as long as you know what to order. Try asking these questions when you call ahead or before you order. Ask the restaurant “Do you or would you on request...”:
  - Serve margarine (rather than butter) with the meal?
  - Serve fat-free (skim) milk rather than whole milk or cream?
  - Use less oil when cooking?
  - Trim visible fat off poultry or meat?
  - Leave all butter, gravy, or sauces off a side dish or entree?
  - Serve salad dressing on the side?
  - Accommodate special requests if made in advance by telephone or in person?
  - Above all else, don’t get discouraged. There are usually several healthy choices to choose from at most restaurants.

**Reading the Menu -**
- Choose lower-calorie, low-fat cooking methods. Look for terms like steamed, in its own juice (au jus), garden fresh, broiled, baked, roasted, poached, tomato juice, dry boiled (in wine or lemon juice), and lightly sautéed or stir-fried.
- Be aware of foods high in calories, fat, and saturated fat. Watch out for terms like butter sauce, fried, crispy, creamed, in cream or cheese sauce, au gratin, au fromage, scalloped, parmesan, hollandaise, bernaise, marinated (in oil), stewed, basted, sautéed, stir-fried, casserole, hash, prime, pot pie and pastry crust.

**Specific Tips for Healthy Choices**

**Breakfast**
- Fresh fruit or small glass of citrus juice
- Whole grain bread, bagel or English muffin with jelly or honey
- Whole grain cereal with low-fat (1%) or fat-free milk
- Oatmeal with fat-free milk topped with fruit
- Omelet made with egg whites or egg substitute
- Multigrain pancakes without butter on top
- Nonfat yogurt (try adding cereal or fresh fruit)

**Beverages**
- Water with lemon
- Flavored sparkling water (noncaloric)
- Juice spritzer (half fruit juice and half sparkling water)
- Iced tea
- Tomato juice (reduced sodium)
Bread
Most bread and breadsticks are low in calories and low in fat. The calories add up when you add butter, margarine, or olive oil to the bread. Also, eating a lot of bread in addition to your meal will fill you up with extra unwanted calories and not leave enough room for fruits and vegetables.

Appetizers
- Steamed seafood
- Shrimp* cocktail (limit cocktail sauce - it's high in sodium)
- Melons or fresh fruit
- Bean soups
- Salad with reduced fat dressing (or add lemon juice or vinegar)

*If you are on a cholesterol-lowering diet, eat shrimp and other shellfish in moderation.

Entree
- Poultry, fish, shellfish and vegetable dishes are healthy choices
- Pasta with red sauce or with vegetables (primavera)
- Look for terms like baked, broiled, steamed, poached, lightly sautéed or stir-fried
- Ask for sauces and dressings on the side
- Limit the amount of butter, margarine, and salt you use at the table

Salads/Salad Bars
- Fresh greens, lettuce and spinach
- Fresh vegetables - tomato, mushroom, carrots, cucumber, peppers, onion, radishes, and broccoli
- Beans, chick peas and kidney beans
- Skip the nonvegetable choices: deli meats, bacon, egg, cheese, croutons
- Choose lower-calorie, reduced-fat or fat-free dressing, lemon juice, or vinegar

Side Dish
- Plain vegetables and starches (rice, potato, noodles) make good additions to meals and can also be combined for a lower-calorie alternative to higher-calorie entrees
- Ask for side dishes without butter or margarine
- Ask for mustard, salsa or low-fat yogurt instead of sour cream or butter

Dessert/Coffee
- Fresh fruit
- Nonfat frozen yogurt
- Sherbet or fruit sorbet (these are usually fat free, but check the calorie content)
- Try sharing a dessert
- Ask for low-fat milk for your coffee (instead of cream or half-'n-half)

VI. A.3.b. Tips for Healthy Multicultural Dining Out

If you’re dining out or bringing in, it is easy to find healthy foods. Knowing about American food terms, as well as other ethnic cuisines can help make your dining experience healthy and enjoyable! The following list includes healthy food choices (lower in calories and fat) and terms to look for when making your selection.

Chinese
Choose More Often...
- Steamed
- Jum (poached)
- Chu (boiled)
- Kow (roasted)
- Shu (barbecued)
- Hoison sauce with assorted Chinese vegetables: broccoli, mushroom, onion, cabbage, snow peas, scallions, bamboo shoots, water chestnuts, asparagus
- Oyster sauce (made from seafood)
- Lightly stir-fried in mild sauce
- Cooked in light wine sauce
- Hot and spicy tomato sauce
- Sweet and sour sauce
- Hot mustard sauce
- Reduced sodium soy sauce
- Dishes without MSG added
- Garnished with spinach or broccoli
- Fresh fish filets, shrimp, scallops
- Chicken, without skin
- Lean beef
- Bean curd (tofu)
- Moo Shu vegetable, chicken or shrimp
- Steamed rice
- Lychee fruit

French

Choose More Often...
- Dinner salad with vinegar or lemon juice dressing (or other reduced fat dressing)
- Crusty bread without butter
- Fresh fish, shrimp, scallops, steamed mussels (without sauces)
- Chicken breast, without skin
- Rice and noodles without cream or added butter or other fat
- Fresh fruit for dessert

Italian

Choose More Often...
- Lightly sautéed with onions
- Shallots
- Peppers and mushrooms

- Artichoke hearts
- Sun-dried tomatoes
- Red sauces - spicy marinara sauce (arrabiata), marinara sauce or cacciatore
- Light red sauce or light red or white wine sauce
- Light mushroom sauce
- Red clam sauce
- Primavera (no cream sauce)
- Lemon sauce
- Capers
- Herbs and spices - garlic and oregano
- Crushed tomatoes and spices
- Florentine (spinach)
- Grilled (often fish or vegetables)
- Piccata (lemon)
- Manzanne (eggplant)

Middle Eastern

Choose More Often ...
- Lemon dressing, lemon juice
- Blended or seasoned with Middle Eastern spices
- Herbs and spices
- Mashed chickpeas
- Fava beans
- Smoked eggplant
- With tomatoes, onions, green peppers and cucumbers
- Spiced ground meat
- Special garlic sauce
- Basted with tomato sauce
- Garlic
- Chopped parsley and/or onion
- Couscous (grain)
- Rice or bulgur (cracked wheat)
- Stuffed with rice and imported spices
- Grilled on a skewer
- Marinated and barbecued
- Baked
- Charbroiled or charcoal broiled
- Fresh fruit

**Japanese**

*Choose More Often...*
- House salad with fresh ginger and cellophane (clear rice) noodles
- Rice
- Nabemono
- Chicken, fish or shrimp teriyaki, broiled in sauce
- Menrui or soba noodles, often used in soups
- Yakimono (broiled)
- Tofu or bean curd
- Grilled vegetables

**Indian**

*Choose More Often...*
- Tikka (pan roasted)
- Cooked with or marinated in yogurt
- Cooked with green vegetables, onions, tomatoes, peppers, and mushrooms
- With spinach (saag)
- Baked leavened bread
- Masala
- Tandoori
- Paneer

- Cooked with curry, marinated in spices
- Lentils, chick beans, garbanzo beans, beans
- Garnished with dried fruits
- Chickpeas (garbanzo) and potatoes
- Basmati rice (pullao)
- Matta (peas)
- Chicken or shrimp kebab

**Mexican**

*Choose More Often...*
- Shredded spicy chicken
- Rice and black beans
- Rice
- Ceviche (fish marinated in lime juice and mixed with spices)
- Served with salsa (hot red tomato sauce)
- Served with salsa verde (green chili sauce)
- Covered with enchilada sauce
- Topped with shredded lettuce, diced tomatoes and onions
- Served with or wrapped in a corn or wheat flour (soft) tortilla
- Grilled
- Marinated
- Picante sauce
- Simmered with chili vegetarian tomato sauce

**Thai**

*Choose More Often...*
- Barbecued, sautéed, broiled, boiled, or steamed, braised, marinated
- Charbroiled
- Basil sauce, basil or sweet basil leaves
- Lime sauce or lime juice
- Chili sauce or crushed dried chili flakes
■ Thai spices
■ Served in hollowed-out pineapple
■ Fish sauce
■ Hot sauce
■ Napa, bamboo shoots, black mushrooms, ginger, garlic
■ Bed of mixed vegetables
■ Scallions, onions

Steakhouses

Choose More Often...
■ Lean broiled beef (no more than 6 ounces) - London broil, filet mignon, round and flank steaks
■ Baked potato without added butter, margarine or sour cream. Try low-fat yogurt or mustard.
■ Green salad with reduced fat dressing
■ Steamed vegetables without added butter or margarine. Try lemon juice and herbs.
■ Seafood dishes (usually indicated as “surf” on menus)

Fast Food
■ Grilled chicken breast sandwich without mayonnaise
■ Single hamburger without cheese
■ Grilled chicken salad with reduced-fat dressing
■ Garden salad with reduced-fat dressing
■ Low-fat or nonfat yogurt
■ Fat-free muffin
■ Cereal with low-fat milk

Deli/Sandwich Shop

Choose More Often...
■ Fresh sliced vegetables in pita bread with low-fat dressing, yogurt or mustard
■ Cup of bean soup (lentil, minestrone)
■ Turkey breast sandwich with mustard, lettuce, tomato
■ Fresh fruit
## Sample Reduced-Calorie Menus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Calories</th>
<th>Total CHO</th>
<th>Total Fat</th>
<th>Sodium (mg)</th>
<th>SFA % kcal</th>
<th>Cholesterol (mg)</th>
<th>Protein % kcal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Traditional Cuisine</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,600</td>
<td>1,613</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>1,341</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>142</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,200</td>
<td>1,220</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>1,043</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Asian-American Cuisine</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,600</td>
<td>1,609</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>1,296</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>148</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,200</td>
<td>1,220</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>1,043</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>117</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Southern Cuisine</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,600</td>
<td>1,653</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>1,231</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>172</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,200</td>
<td>1,225</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>867</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>142</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mexican-American Cuisine</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,600</td>
<td>1,638</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>1,616</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>143</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,200</td>
<td>1,239</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>1,364</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>91</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lacta-Ovo Vegetarian Cuisine</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,600</td>
<td>1,650</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>1,829</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>82</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,200</td>
<td>1,205</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>1,355</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### TABLE VI.A.4.a:

**SAMPLE MENU: TRADITIONAL AMERICAN CUISINE, REDUCED CALORIE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1,600 Calories</th>
<th>1,200 Calories</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Breakfast</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whole Wheat Bread</td>
<td>1 slice</td>
<td>1 slice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jelly, regular</td>
<td>2 tsp</td>
<td>2 tsp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cereal, Shredded Wheat</td>
<td>1 cup</td>
<td>½ cup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Milk, 1% low-fat</td>
<td>1 cup</td>
<td>1 cup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orange Juice</td>
<td>½ cup</td>
<td>½ cup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coffee, Regular</td>
<td>1 cup</td>
<td>1 cup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Milk, 1% low-fat</td>
<td>1 oz</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lunch</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roast Beef Sandwich</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whole Wheat Bread</td>
<td>2 slices</td>
<td>2 slices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lean Roast Beef, unseasoned</td>
<td>2 oz</td>
<td>2 oz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>American Cheese, low-fat, low-sodium</td>
<td>1 slice (¾ oz)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lettuce</td>
<td>1 leaf</td>
<td>1 leaf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tomato</td>
<td>3 slices</td>
<td>3 slices</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mayonnaise, low-calorie</td>
<td>2 tsp</td>
<td>1 tsp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apple</td>
<td>1 medium</td>
<td>1 medium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water</td>
<td>1 cup</td>
<td>1 cup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dinner</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salmon</td>
<td>3 oz</td>
<td>2 oz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vegetable Oil</td>
<td>1½ tsp</td>
<td>1½ tsp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baked Potato</td>
<td>¾ medium</td>
<td>¾ medium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Margarine</td>
<td>1 tsp</td>
<td>1 tsp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carrots seasoned with margarine</td>
<td>½ cup</td>
<td>½ cup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Green Beans seasoned with margarine</td>
<td>½ cup</td>
<td>½ cup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White Dinner Roll</td>
<td>1 medium</td>
<td>1 small</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ice Milk</td>
<td>½ cup</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iced Tea, unsweetened</td>
<td>1 cup</td>
<td>1 cup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water</td>
<td>2 cups</td>
<td>2 cups</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Snack</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Popcorn, air popped</td>
<td>2½ cups</td>
<td>2½ cups</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Margarine</td>
<td>1½ tsp</td>
<td>¾ tsp</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Calories: 1,613 | Calories: 1,247
Total Carb, % kcals: 55 | Total Carb, % kcals: 58
Total Fat, % kcals: 29 | Total Fat, % kcals: 26
*Sodium, mg: 1,341 | *Sodium, mg: 1,043
SFA, % kcals: 8 | SFA, % kcals: 7
Cholesterol, mg: 142 | Cholesterol, mg: 96
Protein, % kcals: 19 | Protein, % kcals: 19

1,600: 100% RDA met for all nutrients except: Vit E 99%, Iron 73%, Zinc 91%
1,200: 100% RDA met for all nutrients except: Vit E 80%, Vit B6 96%, Vit B12 94%, Calcium 68%, Iron 63%, Zinc 73%
* No salt added in recipe preparation or as seasoning. Consume at least 32 oz. water.
## Sample Menu: Asian-American Cuisine, Reduced Calorie

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1,600 Calories</th>
<th>1,200 Calories</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Breakfast</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Banana</td>
<td>1 small</td>
<td>1 small</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whole Wheat Bread</td>
<td>2 slices</td>
<td>1 slice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Margarine</td>
<td>1 tsp</td>
<td>1 tsp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orange Juice</td>
<td>¾ cup</td>
<td>¾ cup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Milk, 1% low-fat</td>
<td>¾ cup</td>
<td>¾ cup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lunch</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beef Noodle Soup, canned, low-sodium</td>
<td>½ cup</td>
<td>½ cup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chinese Noodle and Beef Salad</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beef Roast</td>
<td>3 oz</td>
<td>2 oz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peanut Oil</td>
<td>1 ½ tsp</td>
<td>1 tsp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soy Sauce, low-sodium</td>
<td>1 tsp</td>
<td>1 tsp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carrots</td>
<td>¾ cup</td>
<td>¾ cup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zucchini</td>
<td>¾ cup</td>
<td>¾ cup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Onion</td>
<td>¾ cup</td>
<td>¾ cup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chinese Noodles, soft-type</td>
<td>¾ cup</td>
<td>¾ cup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apple</td>
<td>1 medium</td>
<td>1 medium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tea, unsweetened</td>
<td>1 cup</td>
<td>1 cup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dinner</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pork Stir-fry with Vegetables</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pork Cutlet</td>
<td>2 oz</td>
<td>2 oz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peanut Oil</td>
<td>1 tsp</td>
<td>1 tsp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soy Sauce, low-sodium</td>
<td>1 tsp</td>
<td>1 tsp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Broccoli</td>
<td>¾ cup</td>
<td>¾ cup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carrots</td>
<td>1 cup</td>
<td>½ cup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mushrooms</td>
<td>¾ cup</td>
<td>½ cup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steamed White Rice</td>
<td>1 cup</td>
<td>½ cup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tea, unsweetened</td>
<td>1 cup</td>
<td>1 cup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Snack</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Almond Cookies</td>
<td>2 cookies</td>
<td>——</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Milk, 1% low-fat</td>
<td>¾ cup</td>
<td>¾ cup</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table VI.A.4.b:**

1,600: 100% RDA met for all nutrients except: Zinc 95%, Iron 87%, Calcium 93%
1,200: 100% RDA met for all nutrients except: Vit E 75%, Calcium 84%, Magnesium 98%, Iron 66%, Zinc 77%

* No salt added in recipe preparation or as seasoning. Consume at least 32 oz. water.
### Sample Menu: Southern Cuisine, Reduced Calorie

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1,600 Calories</th>
<th>1,200 Calories</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Breakfast</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oatmeal, prepared with 1% low-fat milk</td>
<td>½ cup</td>
<td>½ cup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Milk, 1% low-fat</td>
<td>½ cup</td>
<td>½ cup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English Muffin</td>
<td>1 medium</td>
<td>——</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cream Cheese, light, 18% fat</td>
<td>1 T</td>
<td>——</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orange Juice</td>
<td>¾ cup</td>
<td>½ cup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coffee</td>
<td>1 cup</td>
<td>1 cup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Milk, 1% low-fat</td>
<td>1 oz</td>
<td>1 oz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lunch</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baked Chicken, without skin</td>
<td>2 oz</td>
<td>2 oz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vegetable Oil</td>
<td>1 tsp</td>
<td>½ tsp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salad</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lettuce</td>
<td>½ cup</td>
<td>½ cup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tomato</td>
<td>½ cup</td>
<td>½ cup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cucumber</td>
<td>½ cup</td>
<td>½ cup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oil and Vinegar Dressing</td>
<td>2 tsp</td>
<td>1 tsp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White Rice, seasoned with margarine, diet</td>
<td>½ cup</td>
<td>½ cup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baking Powder Biscuit, prepared with vegetable oil</td>
<td>1 small</td>
<td>½ small</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Margarine</td>
<td>1 tsp</td>
<td>1 tsp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water</td>
<td>1 cup</td>
<td>1 cup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dinner</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lean Roast Beef</td>
<td>3 oz</td>
<td>2 oz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Onion</td>
<td>¼ cup</td>
<td>¼ cup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beef Gravy, water-based</td>
<td>1 T</td>
<td>1 T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turnip Greens, seasoned with margarine, diet</td>
<td>½ cup</td>
<td>½ cup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sweet Potato, baked</td>
<td>1 small</td>
<td>1 small</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Margarine, diet</td>
<td>½ tsp</td>
<td>½ tsp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ground Cinnamon</td>
<td>1 tsp</td>
<td>1 tsp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brown Sugar</td>
<td>1 tsp</td>
<td>1 tsp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cornbread prepared with margarine, diet</td>
<td>½ medium slice</td>
<td>½ medium slice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Honeydew Melon</td>
<td>¾ medium</td>
<td>¾ medium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iced Tea, sweetened with sugar</td>
<td>1 cup</td>
<td>1 cup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Snack</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saltine Crackers, unsalted tops</td>
<td>4 crackers</td>
<td>4 crackers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mozzarella Cheese, part-skim, low-sodium</td>
<td>1 oz</td>
<td>1 oz</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Calories: 1,653 | Calories: 1,225  
Total Carb, % kcas: 53 | Total Carb, % kcas: 50  
Total Fat, % kcas: 28 | Total Fat, % kcas: 31  
*Sodium, mg: 1,231 | *Sodium, mg: 867  
SFA, % kcas: 8 | SFA, % kcas: 9  
Cholesterol, mg: 172 | Cholesterol, mg: 142  
Protein, % kcas: 20 | Protein, % kcas: 21

1,600: 100% RDA met for all nutrients except: Vit E 97%, Magnesium 98%, Iron 78%, Zinc 90%
1,200: 100% RDA met for all nutrients except: Vit E 82%, Vit B6 & B12 95%, Vit B6 99%, Vit B12 88%, Magnesium 83%, Iron 56%, Zinc 70%

* No salt added in recipe preparation or as seasoning. Consume at least 32 oz. water.
**Sample Menu: Mexican-American Cuisine, Reduced Calorie**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Breakfast</th>
<th>1,600 Calories</th>
<th>1,200 Calories</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cantaloupe</td>
<td>1 cup</td>
<td>½ cup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Farina, prepared with 1% low-fat milk</td>
<td>½ cup</td>
<td>½ cup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White Bread</td>
<td>1 slice</td>
<td>1 slice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Margarine</td>
<td>1 tsp</td>
<td>1 tsp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jelly</td>
<td>1 tsp</td>
<td>1 tsp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orange Juice</td>
<td>1½ cup</td>
<td>¾ cup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Milk, 1% low-fat</td>
<td>½ cup</td>
<td>½ cup</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Lunch**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Beef Enchilada</th>
<th>2 tortillas</th>
<th>2 tortillas</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tortilla, corn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lean Roast Beef</td>
<td>2 ½ oz</td>
<td>2 oz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vegetable Oil</td>
<td>½ tsp</td>
<td>½ tsp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Onion</td>
<td>1 T</td>
<td>1 T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tomato</td>
<td>4 T</td>
<td>4 T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lettuce</td>
<td>½ cup</td>
<td>½ cup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chili Peppers</td>
<td>2 tsp</td>
<td>2 tsp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Refried Beans, prepared with</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vegetable oil</td>
<td>½ cup</td>
<td>½ cup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carrots</td>
<td>5 sticks</td>
<td>5 sticks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Celery</td>
<td>6 sticks</td>
<td>6 sticks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Milk, 1% low-fat</td>
<td>½ cup</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Dinner**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chicken Taco</th>
<th>1 tortilla</th>
<th>1 tortilla</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tortilla, corn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chicken Breast, without skin</td>
<td>2 oz</td>
<td>1 oz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vegetable Oil</td>
<td>½ tsp</td>
<td>½ tsp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cheddar Cheese, low-fat, low-sodium</td>
<td>1 oz</td>
<td>½ oz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guacamole</td>
<td>2 T</td>
<td>1 T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salsa</td>
<td>1 T</td>
<td>1 T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corn, seasoned with</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>marginarine</td>
<td>½ cup</td>
<td>½ cup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spanish Rice without meat, seasoned</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>without margarine</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Banana</td>
<td>1 large</td>
<td>½ large</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coffee</td>
<td>1 cup</td>
<td>1 cup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Milk 1%</td>
<td>1 oz</td>
<td>1 oz</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Calories:</th>
<th>1,638</th>
<th>1,239</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Total Carb, % kcs:</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Fat, % kcs:</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>*Sodium, mg:</td>
<td>1,616</td>
<td>1,364</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cholesterol, mg:</td>
<td>143</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protein, % kcs:</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1,600: 100% RDA met for all nutrients except: Vit E 97%, Zinc 84%
1,200: 100% RDA met for all nutrients except: Vit E 71%, Vit B, & B, 91%, Vit B, & Iron 90%,
Calcium 92%, Magnesium 95%, Zinc 64%

* No salt added in recipe preparation or as seasoning. Consume at least 32 oz. water.
### TABLE VI.A.4.e:

**Sample Menu: Lacto-Ovo Vegetarian Cuisine, Reduced Calorie**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1,600 Calories</th>
<th>1,200 Calories</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Breakfast</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orange</td>
<td>1 medium</td>
<td>1 medium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pancakes, made with 1% low-fat milk, egg whites</td>
<td>3 4” circles</td>
<td>2 4” circles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pancake Syrup</td>
<td>2 T</td>
<td>1 T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Margarine, diet</td>
<td>½ tsp</td>
<td>½ tsp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Milk, 1% low-fat</td>
<td>1 cup</td>
<td>½ cup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coffee</td>
<td>1 cup</td>
<td>1 cup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Milk, 1% low-fat</td>
<td>1 oz</td>
<td>1 oz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lunch</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vegetable Soup, canned, low-sodium</td>
<td>1 cup</td>
<td>½ cup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bagel</td>
<td>1 medium</td>
<td>½ medium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Processed American Cheese, low-fat and low sodium</td>
<td>¾ oz</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spinach Salad</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spinach</td>
<td>1 cup</td>
<td>1 cup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mushrooms</td>
<td>¾ cup</td>
<td>¾ cup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salad Dressing, regular calorie</td>
<td>2 tsp</td>
<td>2 tsp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apple</td>
<td>1 medium</td>
<td>1 medium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iced Tea, unsweetened</td>
<td>1 cup</td>
<td>1 cup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dinner</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Omelette</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Egg Whites</td>
<td>4 large eggs</td>
<td>4 large eggs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Green Pepper</td>
<td>2 T</td>
<td>2 T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Onion</td>
<td>2 T</td>
<td>2 T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mozzarella Cheese, made from part-skim milk, low-sodium</td>
<td>1½ oz</td>
<td>1 oz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vegetable Oil</td>
<td>1 T</td>
<td>½ T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brown Rice, seasoned with margarine, diet</td>
<td>½ cup</td>
<td>½ cup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carrots, seasoned with margarine, diet</td>
<td>½ cup</td>
<td>½ cup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whole Wheat Bread</td>
<td>1 slice</td>
<td>1 slice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Margarine, diet</td>
<td>1 tsp</td>
<td>1 tsp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fig Bar Cookie</td>
<td>1 bar</td>
<td>1 bar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tea</td>
<td>1 cup</td>
<td>1 cup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Honey</td>
<td>1 tsp</td>
<td>1 tsp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Snack</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Milk, 1% low-fat</td>
<td>¾ cup</td>
<td>¾ cup</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Calories: 1,650 Calories: 1,205
Total Carbohydrate, % kcal: 56 Total Carbohydrate, % kcal: 60
Total Fat, % kcal: 27 Total Fat, % kcal: 25
*Sodium, mg: 1,829 *Sodium, mg: 1,335
SFA, % kcal: 8 SFA, % kcal: 7
Cholesterol, mg: 82 Cholesterol, mg: 44
Protein, % kcal: 19 Protein, % kcal: 18

1,600: 100% RDA met for all nutrients except: Vit E 92%, Vit B, 97%, Vit B, 67%, Magnesium 98%, Iron 73%, Zinc 68%
1,200: 100% RDA met for all nutrients except: Vit E 75%, Vit B, 92%, Vit B, 69%, Vit B, 59%, Iron 54%, Zinc 46%

*No salt added in recipe preparation or as seasoning. Consume at least 32 oz. water.
Appendix VII. Resource List

For additional information on overweight and obesity, and related conditions or diseases, you may wish to contact the professional organizations listed below.

The Federal consumer health information gateway, healthfinder, (www.healthfinder.gov) offers convenient access to these and many other resources.

American Dietetic Association
216 West Jackson Boulevard
Chicago, IL 60606-6995
(800) 877-1600
FAX: (312) 899-1979
http://www.eatright.org
- Eat Right America program
- List of nutrition resources
- Find a dietitian, 1-800-366-1655

American College of Sports Medicine
P.O. Box 1440
Indianapolis, IN 46206-1440
(317) 637-9200
FAX: (317) 634-7817
http://www.acsm.org
- Health and Fitness Summit and Exposition
- National Coalition for Promoting Physical Activity
- Public information

National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute
Education Programs Information Center
P.O. Box 30105
Bethesda, MD 20824-0105
(301) 251-1222
FAX: (301) 251-1223
http://www.nhlbi.nih.gov/nhlbi/nhlbi.htm (general NHLBI site)
- Online publications on blood pressure, overweight, cholesterol, heart disease, sleep disorders, and asthma

National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases
31 Center Drive, MSC-2560
Building 31, Room 9A-04
Bethesda, MD 20892-2560
(301) 496-3583
FAX: (301) 496-7422
http://www.niddk.nih.gov
- Many online patient information publications on diabetes
- Many online publications on nutrition and obesity
- WIN — the Weight-Control Information Network 1-800-WIN-8098

The Weight-Control Information Network
National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases
1 WIN WAY
Bethesda, MD 20892-3665
(301) 570-2177
FAX: (301) 570-2186
1-800-WIN-8098

National Digestive Diseases Information Clearinghouse (NIDDK)
2 Information Way
Bethesda, MD 20892-3570
(301) 654-3810
FAX: (301) 907-8906

National Kidney and Urologic Diseases Information Clearinghouse (NIDDK)
3 Information Way
Bethesda, MD 20892-3580
(301) 654-4415
FAX: (301) 907-8906

National Diabetes Information Clearinghouse (NIDDK)
1 Information Way
Bethesda, MD 20892-3560
(301) 654-3327
FAX: (301) 907-8906
American Diabetes Association  
1660 Duke Street  
Alexandria, VA 22314  
1-800 DIABETES  
http://www.diabetes.org
  ■ List of publications

American Cancer Society  
Atlanta, GA  
1-800-ACS-2345  
http://www.cancer.org
  ■ Dietary guidelines online  
  ■ List of publications

National Cancer Institute  
Office of Cancer Communications  
9000 Rockville Pike  
Building 31, Room 10A-24  
Bethesda, MD 20892  
(800) 4-CANCER (800-422-6237)  
http://www.nci.nih.gov
  ■ Many publications online, including those on nutrition and cancer

National Eating Disorders Organization  
6655 South Yale Avenue  
Tulsa, OK 74136  
(918) 481-4044  
FAX: (918) 481-4076  
http://www.laureate.com/aboutned.html
  ■ Publications list  
  ■ Online descriptive information

Eating Disorders Awareness and Prevention, Inc.  
603 Stewart Street, Suite 803  
Seattle, WA 98101  
(206) 382-3587  
http://members.aol.com/edapinc/home.html
  ■ Online descriptive information  
  ■ Publications list

American Anorexia/Bulimia Association, Inc.  
165 West 46th Street #1108  
New York, NY 10036  
(212) 575-6200  
http://members.aol.com/amanbu/index.html
  ■ Online descriptive information

National Association of Anorexia Nervosa and Associated Disorders  
P.O.Box 7  
Highland Park, IL 60035  
(847) 831-3438  
FAX: (847) 433-4632  
http://www.medpatients.com/Health%20Resources/NAANAD.htm

American Heart Association  
7272 Greenville Avenue  
Dallas, TX 75231-4596  
(214) 706-1220  
FAX: (214) 706-1341  
1-800-AHA-USA1 (800-242-8721)  
http://www.americanheart.org
  ■ Publications list  
  ■ Online information  
  ■ Stroke Connection 1-800-553-6321

Hypertension Network, Inc.  
http://www.bloodpressure.com
  ■ Online information  
  ■ Weekly research updates

National Institute of Neurological Disorders and Stroke  
P.O. Box 5801  
Bethesda, MD 20824  
(301) 496-5751  
http://www.ninds.nih.gov
  ■ Online publications on stroke  
  ■ Publications list

National Center on Sleep Disorders Research  
National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute  
Two Rockledge Centre, Suite 7024  
6701 Rockledge Drive, MSC 7920  
Bethesda, MD 20892-7920  
(301) 435-0199  
FAX: (301) 480-3451
American Sleep Disorders Association
1610 14th Street NW, Suite 300
Rochester, MN 55901
(507) 287-6006
Fax: (507) 287-6008
http://www.asda.org
- List of member centers
- Online descriptive information

The Sleep Medicine Home Page
http://www.users.cloud9.net/~thorpy
- List of internet resources
- List of centers
- Online descriptive information

National Mental Health Association
1201 Prince Street
Alexandria, VA 22314-2971
(703) 684-7722
Fax: (703) 684-5968
800/969-NMHA Information Center
http://www.nmha.org

North American Association for the Study of Obesity (NAASO)
8630 Fenton Street
Suite 412
Silver Spring, MD 20910
(301) 563-6526
Fax: (301) 587-2365
http://www.naaso.org
**Abdominal fat**: Fat (adipose tissue) that is centrally distributed between the thorax and pelvis and that induces greater health risk.

**Absolute risk**: The observed or calculated probability of an event in a population under study, as contrasted with the relative risk.

**Aerobic exercise**: A type of physical activity that includes walking, jogging, running, and dancing. Aerobic training improves the efficiency of the aerobic energy-producing systems that can improve cardiorespiratory endurance.

**Age-adjusted**: Summary measures of rates of morbidity or mortality in a population using statistical procedures to remove the effect of age differences in populations that are being compared. Age is probably the most important and the most common variable in determining the risk of morbidity and mortality.

**Anorexiant**: A drug, process, or event that leads to anorexia.

**Anthropometric measurements**: Measurements of human body height, weight, and size of component parts, including skinfold measurement. Used to study and compare the relative proportions under normal and abnormal conditions.

**Atherogenic**: Causing the formation of plaque in the lining of the arteries.

**Behavior therapy**: Behavior therapy constitutes those strategies, based on learning principles such as reinforcement, that provide tools for overcoming barriers to compliance with dietary therapy and/or increased physical activity.

**Biliopancreatic diversion**: A surgical procedure for weight loss that combines a modest amount of gastric restriction with intestinal malabsorption.

**BMI**: Body mass index; the body weight in kilograms divided by the height in meters squared (wt/ht²) used as a practical marker to assess obesity; often referred to as the Quetelet Index. An indicator of optimal weight for health and different from lean mass or percent body fat calculations because it only considers height and weight.

**Body composition**: The ratio of lean body mass (structural and functional elements in cells, body water, muscle, bone, heart, liver, kidneys, etc.) to body fat (essential and storage) mass. Essential fat is necessary for normal physiological functioning (e.g., nerve conduction). Storage fat constitutes the body’s fat reserves, the part that people try to lose.

**BRL 26830A**: An atypical B adrenoreceptor agonist drug that in obese rodents showed an increased metabolic rate and caused a reduction in weight by decreasing body lipid content. It is not approved as a weight loss drug by FDA.

**Carbohydrates**: A nutrient that supplies 4 calories/gram. They may be simple or complex. Simple carbohydrates are called sugars, and complex carbohydrates are called starch and fiber (cellulose). An organic compound—containing
carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen—that is formed by photosynthesis in plants. Carbohydrates are heat producing and are classified as monosaccharides, disaccharides, or polysaccharides.

**Cardiovascular disease (CVD):** Any abnormal condition characterized by dysfunction of the heart and blood vessels. CVD includes atherosclerosis (especially coronary heart disease, which can lead to heart attacks), cerebrovascular disease (e.g., stroke), and hypertension (high blood pressure).

**Central fat distribution:** The waist circumference is an index of body fat distribution. Increasing waist circumference is accompanied by increasing frequencies of overt type 2 diabetes, dyslipidemia, hypertension, coronary heart disease, stroke, and early mortality. In the body fat patterns called android type (apple shaped) fat is deposited around the waist and upper abdominal area and appears most often in men. Abdominal body fat is thought to be associated with a rapid mobilization of fatty acids rather than resulting from other fat depots, although it remains a point of contention. If abdominal fat is indeed more active than other fat depots, it would then provide a mechanism by which we could explain (in part) the increase in blood lipid and glucose levels. The latter have been clearly associated with an increased risk for cardiovascular disease hypertension and type 2 diabetes mellitus. The gynoid type (pear-shaped) of body fat is usually seen in women. The fat is deposited around the hips, thighs, and buttocks, and presumably is used as energy reserve during pregnancy and lactation.

**Cholecystectomy:** Surgical removal of the gallbladder and gallstones, if present.

**Cholecystitis:** Inflammation of the gallbladder, caused primarily by gallstones. Gallbladder disease occurs most often in obese women older than 40 years of age.

**Cholesterol:** A soft, waxy substance manufactured by the body and used in the production of hormones, bile acid, and vitamin D and present in all parts of the body, including the nervous system, muscle, skin, liver, intestines, and heart. Blood cholesterol circulates in the bloodstream. Dietary cholesterol is found in foods of animal origin.

**Cimetidine:** A weight loss drug that is thought to work by suppression of gastric acid or suppression of hunger by blocking histamine H2 receptors. It is not approved by the FDA.

**Cognitive behavior therapy:** A system of psychotherapy based on the premise that distorted or dysfunctional thinking, which influences a person’s mood or behavior, is common to all psychosocial problems. The focus of therapy is to identify the distorted thinking and to replace it with more rational, adaptive thoughts and beliefs.

**Cognitive rehearsal:** A technique used in cognitive behavior therapy. In a weight loss program, for example, individuals first imagine the situation that is causing temptation (such as eating a high fat food), describe the thoughts and feelings that accompany the imagined situation, and make positive self-statements about the situation (e.g., “I am feeling good about choosing a low calorie drink rather than the high fat cheese.”). Then the next step is to follow the positive self-statement with an adaptive behavior (such as walking away from the buffet line to chat with a friend). Finally, individuals are encouraged to reward themselves for doing well in a difficult situation, with either positive statements or material rewards, or both. The idea is to rehearse one’s thoughts and behaviors prior to experiencing the potentially difficult situation, and to be armed with healthy adaptive responses.

**Cognitive restructuring:** A method of identifying and replacing fear-promoting, irrational beliefs with more realistic and functional ones.
**Comorbidity:** Two or more diseases or conditions existing together in an individual.

**Computed tomography (CT) scans:** A radiographic technique for direct visualization and quantification of fat that offers high image contrast and clear separation of fat from other soft tissues. CT can estimate total body adipose tissue volume and identify regional, subcutaneous, visceral, and other adipose tissue depots. Radiation exposure, expense, and unavailability restrict the epidemiologic use of CT.

**Confounding:** Extraneous variables resulting in outcome effects that obscure or exaggerate the “true” effect of an intervention.

**Coronary heart disease (CHD):** A type of heart disease caused by narrowing of the coronary arteries that feed the heart, which needs a constant supply of oxygen and nutrients carried by the blood in the coronary arteries. When the coronary arteries become narrowed or clogged by fat and cholesterol deposits and cannot supply enough blood to the heart, CHD results.

**Cue avoidance:** A stimulus control technique often used in weight loss programs in which individuals are asked to reduce their exposure to certain food cues by making a variety of changes in their habits. The rationale is to make it easier on oneself and reduce temptation by reducing contact with food cues. For example, coming home from work and feeling tired is a time when many people reach for the high fat foods if they are available. By not having the high fat foods within reach, one can avoid eating them.

**Dexfenfluramine:** A serotonin agonist drug used to treat obesity. FDA approval has been withdrawn.

**Diabetes:** A complex disorder of carbohydrate, fat, and protein metabolism that is primarily a result of relative or complete lack of insulin secretion by the beta cells of the pancreas or a result of defects of the insulin receptors.

**Diastolic blood pressure:** The minimum pressure that remains within the artery when the heart is at rest.

**Diethylpropion:** An appetite suppressant prescribed in the treatment of obesity.

**Dopamine:** A catecholamine neurotransmitter that is found primarily in the basal ganglia of the central nervous system. Major functions include the peripheral inhibition and excitation of certain muscles; cardiac excitation; and metabolic, endocrine and central nervous system actions.

**Dual energy X-ray absorptiometry (DEXA):** A method used to estimate total body fat and percent of body fat. Potential disadvantages include whole body radiation and the long time required for scanning while the subject lies on a hard table.

**Dyslipidemia:** Disorders in the lipoprotein metabolism; classified as hypercholesterolemia, hypertriglyceridemia, combined hyperlipidemia, and low levels of high-density lipoprotein (HDL) cholesterol. All of the dyslipidemias can be primary or secondary. Both elevated levels of low-density lipoprotein (LDL) cholesterol and low levels of HDL cholesterol predispose to premature atherosclerosis.

**Efficacy:** The extent to which a specific intervention, procedure, regimen, or service produces a beneficial result under ideal conditions. Ideally, the determination of efficacy is based on the results of a randomized control trial.

**Energy balance:** Energy is the capacity of a body or a physical system for doing work. Energy balance is the state in which the total energy intake equals total energy needs.

**Energy deficit:** A state in which total energy intake is less than total energy need.

**Ephedrine:** A sympathomimetic drug that stimulates thermogenesis in laboratory animals and
humans. Animal studies show that it may reduce fat content and, therefore, body weight by mechanisms that probably involve increased expenditure and reduced food intake.

**Extreme obesity:** A body mass index $\geq 40$.

**Femoxetine:** A selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor drug used in obese patients for weight loss.

**Fenfluramine:** A serotonin agonist drug used in the treatment of obesity. FDA approval has been withdrawn.

**Fibrinogen:** A plasma protein that is converted into fibrin by thrombin in the presence of calcium ions. Fibrin is responsible for the semisolid character of a blood clot.

**Fluoxetine:** An antidepressant drug used to promote weight loss whose action is mediated by highly specific inhibition of serotonin reuptake into presynaptic neurons. Serotonin acts in the brain to alter feeding and satiety by decreasing carbohydrate intake, resulting in weight reduction.

**Framingham Heart Study:** Study begun in 1948 to identify constitutional, environmental, and behavioral influences on the development of cardiovascular disease. Framingham data show that increased relative weight and central obesity are associated with elevated levels of risk factors (e.g., cholesterol, blood pressure, blood glucose, uric acid), increased incidence of cardiovascular disease, and increased death rates for all causes combined.

**Gallstones:** Constituents in the gallbladder that are not reabsorbed, including bile salts and lipid substances such as cholesterol that become highly concentrated. They can cause severe pain (obstruction and cramps) as they move into the common bile duct. Risk factors for cholesterol gallstone formation include female gender, weight gain, overweight, high energy intake, ethnic factors (Pima Indians and Scandinavians), use of certain drugs (clofibrate, estrogens, and bile acid sequestrants), and presence of gastrointestinal disease. Gallstones sometimes develop during dieting for weight reduction. There is an increased risk for gallstones and acute gallbladder disease during severe caloric restriction.

**Gastric banding:** Surgery to limit the amount of food the stomach can hold by closing part of it off. A band made of special material is placed around the stomach near its upper end, creating a small pouch and a narrow passage into the larger remainder of the stomach. The small outlet delays the emptying of food from the pouch and causes a feeling of fullness.

**Gastric bubble/balloon:** A free-floating intragastric balloon used in the treatment of obesity.

**Gastric bypass:** A surgical procedure that combines the creation of small stomach pouches to restrict food intake and the construction of bypasses of the duodenum and other segments of the small intestine to cause food malabsorption. Patients generally lose two-thirds of their excess weight after 2 years.

**Gastric exclusion:** Same as gastric partitioning and Roux-en Y bypass. A small stomach pouch is created by stapling or by vertical banding to restrict food intake. A Y-shaped section of the small intestine is attached to the pouch to allow food to bypass the duodenum as well as the first portion of the jejunum.

**Gastric partitioning:** See gastric exclusion.

**Gastroplasty:** See also jejuno-ileostomy. A surgical procedure that limits the amount of food the stomach can hold by closing off part of the stomach. Food intake is restricted by creating a small pouch at the top of the stomach where the food enters from the esophagus. The pouch initially holds about 1 ounce of food and expands to 2-3 ounces with time. The pouch’s lower outlet usually has a diameter of about 1/4 inch. The
small outlet delays the emptying of food from the pouch and causes a feeling of fullness.

**Genotype:** The entire genetic makeup of an individual. The fundamental constitution of an organism in terms of its hereditary factors. A group of organisms in which each has the same hereditary characteristics.

**Glucose tolerance:** The power of the normal liver to absorb and store large quantities of glucose and the effectiveness of intestinal absorption of glucose. The glucose tolerance test is a metabolic test of carbohydrate tolerance that measures active insulin, a hepatic function based on the ability of the liver to absorb glucose. The test consists of ingesting 100 grams of glucose into a fasting stomach; blood sugar should return to normal in 2 to 2 1⁄2 hours after ingestion.

**Hemoglobin A1c:** One of the fractions of glycosylated hemoglobin A. Glycosylated hemoglobin is formed when linkages of glucose and related monosaccharides bind to hemoglobin A and its concentration represents the average blood glucose level over the previous several weeks. HbA1c levels are used as a measure of long-term control of plasma glucose (normal, 4 to 6 percent). In controlled diabetes mellitus, the concentration of glycosylated hemoglobin A is within the normal range, but in uncontrolled cases the level may be 3 to 4 times the normal concentration. Generally, complications are substantially lower among patients with HbA1c levels of 7 percent or less than in patients with HbA1c levels of 9 percent or more.

**Hemorrhagic stroke:** A disorder involving bleeding within ischemic brain tissue. Hemorrhagic stroke occurs when blood vessels that are damaged or dead from lack of blood supply (infarcted), located within an area of infarcted brain tissue, rupture and transform an “ischemic” stroke into a hemorrhagic stroke. Ischemia is inadequate tissue oxygenation caused by reduced blood flow; infarction is tissue death resulting from ischemia. Bleeding irritates the brain tissues, causing swelling (cerebral edema). Blood collects into a mass (hematoma). Both swelling and hematoma will compress and displace brain tissue.

**Heritability:** The proportion of observed variation in a particular trait that can be attributed to inherited genetic factors in contrast to environmental ones.

**High-density lipoproteins (HDL):** Lipoproteins that contain a small amount of cholesterol and carry cholesterol away from body cells and tissues to the liver for excretion from the body. Low-level HDL increases the risk of heart disease, so the higher the HDL level, the better. The HDL component normally contains 20 to 30 percent of total cholesterol, and HDL levels are inversely correlated with coronary heart disease risk.

**Hirsutism:** Presence of excessive body and facial hair, especially in women; may be present in normal adults as an expression of an ethnic characteristic or may develop in children or adults as the result of an endocrine disorder. Apert’s hirsutism is caused by a virilizing disorder of adrenocortical origin. Constitutional hirsutism is mild-to-moderate hirsutism present in individuals exhibiting otherwise normal endocrine and reproductive functions; it appears to be an inheritable form of hirsutism and commonly is an expression of an ethnic characteristic. Idiopathic hirsutism is of uncertain origin in women, who may exhibit menstrual abnormalities and sterility. Some authorities believe the hirsutism reflects hypersecretion of adrenocortical androgens.

**Hypercholesterolemia (high blood cholesterol):** Cholesterol is the most abundant steroid in animal tissues, especially in bile and gallstones. The relationship between the intake of cholesterol and its manufacture by the body to its utiliza-
tion, sequestration, or excretion from the body is called the cholesterol balance. When cholesterol accumulates, the balance is positive; when it declines, the balance is negative. In 1993, the NHLBI National Cholesterol Education Program (NCEP) Expert Panel on Detection, Evaluation, and Treatment of High Blood Cholesterol in Adults issued an updated set of recommendations for monitoring and treatment of blood cholesterol levels. The NCEP guidelines recommended that total cholesterol levels and subfractions of high-density lipoprotein (HDL) cholesterol be measured beginning at age 20 in all adults, with subsequent periodic screenings as needed. Even in the group of patients at lowest risk for coronary heart disease (total cholesterol <200 mg/dL and HDL >35 mg/dL), the NCEP recommended that rescreening take place at least once every 5 years or upon physical examination.

**Hypertension**: High blood pressure (i.e., abnormally high blood pressure tension involving systolic and/or diastolic levels). The Sixth Report of the Joint National Committee on Prevention, Detection, Evaluation, and Treatment of High Blood Pressure defines hypertension as a systolic blood pressure of 140 mm Hg or greater, a diastolic blood pressure of 90 mm Hg or greater, or taking hypertensive medication. The cause may be adrenal, benign, essential, Goldblatt’s, idiopathic, malignant PATE, portal, postpartum, primary, pulmonary, renal or renovascular.

**Hypertriglyceridemia**: An excess of triglycerides in the blood that is an autosomal dominant disorder with the phenotype of hyperlipoproteinemia, type IV. The National Cholesterol Education Program defines a high level of triglycerides as being between 400 and 1,000 mg/dL.

**Incidence**: The rate at which a certain event occurs (i.e., the number of new cases of a specific disease occurring during a certain period).

**Insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus (type I diabetes)**: A disease characterized by high levels of blood glucose resulting from defects in insulin secretion, insulin action, or both. Autoimmune, genetic, and environmental factors are involved in the development of type I diabetes.

**Ischemic stroke**: A condition in which the blood supply to part of the brain is cut off. Also called “plug-type” strokes. Blocked arteries starve areas of the brain controlling sight, speech, sensation, and movement so that these functions are partially or completely lost. Ischemic stroke is the most common type of stroke, accounting for 80 percent of all strokes. Most ischemic strokes are caused by a blood clot called a thrombus, which blocks blood flow in the arteries feeding the brain, usually the carotid artery in the neck, the major vessel bringing blood to the brain. When it becomes blocked, the risk of stroke is very high.

**Jejuno-ileostomy**: See gastroplasty.


**Lipoprotein**: Protein-coated packages that carry fat and cholesterol throughout the bloodstream. There are four general classes: high-density, low-density, very low-density, and chylomicrons.

**Locus/loci**: A general anatomical term for a site in the body or the position of a gene on a chromosome.

**Longitudinal study**: Also referred to as a “cohort study” or “prospective study”; the analytic method of epidemiologic study in which subsets of a defined population can be identified who are, have been, or in the future may be exposed or not exposed, or exposed in different degrees, to a factor or factors hypothesized to influence the probability of occurrence of a given disease or other outcome. The main feature of this type of study is to observe large numbers of subjects over an extended time, with comparisons of
incidence rates in groups that differ in exposure levels.

**Low-calorie diet (LCD):** Caloric restriction of about 800 to 1,500 calories (approximately 12 to 15 kcal/kg of body weight) per day.

**Low-density lipoprotein (LDL):** Lipoprotein that contains most of the cholesterol in the blood. LDL carries cholesterol to the tissues of the body, including the arteries. A high level of LDL increases the risk of heart disease. LDL typically contains 60 to 70 percent of the total serum cholesterol and both are directly correlated with CHD risk.

**Lower-fat diet:** An eating plan in which 30 percent or less of the day’s total calories are from fat.

**Macronutrients:** Nutrients in the diet that are the key sources of energy, namely protein, fat, and carbohydrates.

**Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI):** Magnetic resonance imaging uses radio frequency waves to provide direct visualization and quantification of fat. The sharp image contrast of MRI allows clear separation of adipose tissue from surrounding nonlipid structures. Essentially the same information provided by CT is available from MRI, including total body and regional adipose tissue, subcutaneous adipose, and estimates of various visceral adipose tissue components. The advantage of MRI is its lack of ionizing radiation and hence its presumed safety in children, younger adults, and pregnant women. The minimal present use of MRI can be attributed to the expense, limited access to instrumentation, and long scanning time.

**Menopause:** The cessation of menstruation in the human female, which begins at about the age of 50.

**Meta-analysis:** Process of using statistical methods to combine the results of different studies. A frequent application is pooling the results from a set of randomized controlled trials, none of which alone is powerful enough to demonstrate statistical significance.

**Mianserine:** An antidepressant sometimes used in the pharmacotherapy of bulimia nervosa.

**Midaxillary line:** An imaginary vertical line that passes midway between the anterior and posterior axillary (armpit) folds.

**Monounsaturated fat:** An unsaturated fat that is found primarily in plant foods, including olive and canola oils.

**Myocardial infarction (MI):** Gross necrosis of the myocardium as a result of interruption of the blood supply to the area; it is almost always caused by atherosclerosis of the coronary arteries, upon which coronary thrombosis is usually superimposed.

**NHANES:** National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey; conducted every 10 years by the National Center for Health Statistics to survey the dietary habits and health of U.S. residents.

**Neural tube defects:** These defects include problems stemming from fetal development of the spinal cord, spine, brain, and skull, and include birth defects such as spina bifida, anencephaly, and encephalocele. Neural tube defects occur early in pregnancy at about 4 to 6 weeks, usually before a woman knows she is pregnant. Many babies with neural tube defects have difficulty walking and with bladder and bowel control.

**Neuronal atrophy:** Nerve cell death and functional loss.

**Obesity:** The condition of having an abnormally high proportion of body fat. Defined as a body mass index (BMI) of greater than or equal to 30. Subjects are generally classified as obese when body fat content exceeds 30 percent in women and 25 percent in men. The operational definition of obesity in this document is a BMI $\geq 30$. 
**Observational study:** An epidemiologic study that does not involve any intervention, experimental or otherwise. Such a study may be one in which nature is allowed to take its course, with changes in one characteristic being studied in relation to changes in other characteristics. Analytical epidemiologic methods, such as case-control and cohort study designs, are properly called observational epidemiology because the investigator is observing without intervention other than to record, classify, count, and statistically analyze results.

**Orlistat:** A lipase inhibitor used for weight loss. Lipase is an enzyme found in the bowel that assists in lipid absorption by the body. Orlistat blocks this enzyme, reducing the amount of fat the body absorbs by about 30 percent. It is known colloquially as a “fat blocker.” Because more oily fat is left in the bowel to be excreted, Orlistat can cause an oily anal leakage and fecal incontinence. Orlistat may not be suitable for people with bowel conditions such as irritable bowel syndrome or Crohn’s disease.

**Osteoarthritis:** Noninflammatory degenerative joint disease occurring chiefly in older persons, characterized by degeneration of the articular cartilage, hypertrophy of bone at the margins, and changes in the synovial membrane. It is accompanied by pain and stiffness.

**Overweight:** An excess of body weight but not necessarily body fat; a body mass index of 25 to 29.9 kg/m².

**Peripheral regions:** Other regions of the body besides the abdominal region (i.e., the gluteal-femoral area).

**Pharmacotherapy:** A regimen of using appetite suppressant medications to manage obesity by decreasing appetite or increasing the feeling of satiety. These medications decrease appetite by increasing serotonin or catecholamine—two brain chemicals that affect mood and appetite.

**Phenotype:** The entire physical, biochemical, and physiological makeup of an individual as determined by his or her genes and by the environment in the broad sense.

**Phentermine:** An adrenergic isomeric with amphetamine, used as an anorexic; administered orally as a complex with an ion-exchange resin to produce a sustained action.

**Polyunsaturated fat:** An unsaturated fat found in greatest amounts in foods derived from plants, including safflower, sunflower, corn, and soybean oils.

**Postprandial plasma blood glucose:** Glucose tolerance test performed after ingesting food.

**Prevalence:** The number of events, e.g., instances of a given disease or other condition, in a given population at a designated time. When used without qualification, the term usually refers to the situation at specific point in time (point prevalence). Prevalence is a number not a rate.

**Prospective study:** An epidemiologic study in which a group of individuals (a cohort), all free of a particular disease and varying in their exposure to a possible risk factor, is followed over a specific amount of time to determine the incidence rates of the disease in the exposed and unexposed groups.

**Protein:** A class of compounds composed of linked amino acids that contain carbon, hydrogen, nitrogen, oxygen, and sometimes other atoms in specific configurations.

**Randomization:** Also called random allocation. Is allocation of individuals to groups, e.g., for experimental and control regimens, by chance. Within the limits of chance variation, random allocation should make the control and experimental groups similar at the start of an investigation and ensure that personal judgment and prejudices of the investigator do not influence allocation.
Randomized clinical trial (RCT): An epidemiologic experiment in which subjects in a population are randomly allocated into groups, usually called study and control groups, to receive or not to receive an experimental prevention or therapeutic product, maneuver, or intervention. The results are assessed by rigorous comparison of rates of disease, death recovery, or other appropriate outcome in the study and control groups, respectively. RCTs are generally regarded as the most scientifically rigorous method of hypothesis testing available in epidemiology.

Recessive gene: A gene that is phenotypically expressed only when homozygous.

Refractory obesity: Obesity that is resistant to treatment.

Relative risk: The ratio of the incidence rate of a disease among individuals exposed to a specific risk factor to the incidence rate among unexposed individuals; synonymous with risk ratio. Alternatively, the ratio of the cumulative incidence rate in the exposed to the cumulative incidence rate in the unexposed (cumulative incidence ratio). The term relative risk has also been used synonymously with odds ratio. This is because the odds ratio and relative risk approach each other if the disease is rare (<5 percent of population) and the number of subjects is large.

Resting metabolic rate (RMR): RMR accounts for 65 to 75 percent of daily energy expenditure and represents the minimum energy needed to maintain all physiological cell functions in the resting state. The principal determinant of RMR is lean body mass (LBM). Obese subjects have a higher RMR in absolute terms than lean individuals, an equivalent RMR when corrected for LBM and per unit surface area, and a lower RMR when expressed per kilogram of body weight. Obese persons require more energy for any given activity because of a larger mass, but they tend to be more sedentary than lean subjects.

Risk: The probability that an event will occur. Also, a nontechnical term encompassing a variety of measures of the probability of a generally unfavorable outcome.

Roux-en Y bypass: See gastric exclusion; the most common gastric bypass procedure.

Saturated fat: A type of fat found in greatest amounts in foods from animals, such as fatty cuts of meat, poultry with the skin, whole-milk dairy products, lard, and in some vegetable oils, including coconut, palm kernel, and palm oils. Saturated fat raises blood cholesterol more than anything else eaten. On a Step I Diet, no more than 8 to 10 percent of total calories should come from saturated fat, and in the Step II Diet, less than 7 percent of the day’s total calories should come from saturated fat.

Secular trends: A relatively long-term trend in a community or country.

Serotonin: A monoamine vasoconstrictor, found in various animals from coelenterates to vertebrates, in bacteria, and in many plants. In humans, it is synthesized in the intestinal chromaffin cells or in the central or peripheral neurons and is found in high concentrations in many body tissues, including the intestinal mucosa, pineal body, and central nervous system. Produced enzymatically from tryptophan by hydroxylation and decarboxylation, serotonin has many physiologic properties (e.g., inhibits gastric secretion, stimulates smooth muscle, serves as central neurotransmitter, and is a precursor of melatonin).

Sibutramine: A drug used for the management of obesity that helps reduce food intake and is indicated for weight loss and maintenance of weight loss when used in conjunction with a reduced-calorie diet. It works to suppress the appetite primarily by inhibiting the reuptake of the neurotransmitters norepinephrine and serotonin. Side effects include dry mouth, headache,
constipation, insomnia, and a slight increase in average blood pressure. In some patients it causes a higher blood pressure increase.

**Sleep apnea:** A serious, potentially life-threatening breathing disorder characterized by repeated cessation of breathing due to either collapse of the upper airway during sleep or absence of respiratory effort.

**Social pressure:** A strategy used in behavior therapy in which individuals are told that they possess the basic self-control ability to lose weight, but that coming to group meetings will strengthen their abilities. The group is asked to listen and give advice, similar to the way many self-help groups, based on social support, operate.

**Stoma size:** The size of a new opening created surgically between two body structures.

**Stress incontinence:** An involuntary loss of urine that occurs at the same time that internal abdominal pressure is increased, such as with laughing, sneezing, coughing, or physical activity.

**Stress management:** A set of techniques used to help an individual cope more effectively with difficult situations in order to feel better emotionally, improve behavioral skills, and often to enhance feelings of control. Stress management may include relaxation exercises, assertiveness training, cognitive restructuring, time management, and social support. It can be delivered either on a one-to-one basis or in a group format.

**Stroke:** Sudden loss of function of part of the brain because of loss of blood flow. Stroke may be caused by a clot (thrombosis) or rupture (hemorrhage) of a blood vessel to the brain.

**Submaximal heart rate test:** Used to determine the systematic use of physical activity. The submaximal work levels allow work to be increased in small increments until cardiac manifestations such as angina pain appear. This provides a more precise manipulation of workload and gives a reliable and quantitative index of a person’s functional impairment if heart disease is detected.

**Surgical procedures:** See jejun-ileostomy, gastroplasty, gastric bypass, gastric partitioning, gastric exclusion, Roux-en Y bypass and gastric bubble.

**Systolic blood pressure:** The maximum pressure in the artery produced as the heart contracts and blood begins to flow.

**Triglyceride:** A lipid carried through the bloodstream to tissues. Most of the body’s fat tissue is in the form of triglycerides, stored for use as energy. Triglycerides are obtained primarily from fat in foods.

**Type 2 diabetes mellitus:** Usually characterized by a gradual onset with minimal or no symptoms of metabolic disturbance and no requirement for exogenous insulin. The peak age of onset is 50 to 60 years. Obesity and possibly a genetic factor are usually present.

**Validity:** The degree to which the inferences drawn from study results, especially generalization extending beyond the study sample, are warranted when account is taken of the study methods, the representativeness of the study sample, and the nature of the population from which it is drawn.

**Vertical banded gastroplasty:** A surgical treatment for extreme obesity; an operation on the stomach that involves constructing a small pouch in the stomach that empties through a narrow opening into the distal stomach and duodenum.

**Very low-calorie diet (VLCD):** The VLCD of 800 (approximately 6-10 kcal/kg body weight) or fewer calories per day is conducted under physician supervision and monitoring and is restricted to severely obese persons.
Very low-density lipoprotein (VLDL): The lipoprotein particles that initially leave the liver, carrying cholesterol and lipid. VLDLs contain 10 to 15 percent of the total serum cholesterol along with most of the triglycerides in the fasting serum; VLDLs are precursors of LDL, and some forms of VLDL, particularly VLDL remnants, appear to be atherogenic.

Visceral fat: One of the three compartments of abdominal fat. Retroperitoneal and subcutaneous are the other two compartments.

VO₂ max: Maximal oxygen uptake is known as VO₂ max and is the maximal capacity for oxygen consumption by the body during maximal exertion. It is used as an indicator of cardiorespiratory fitness.

Waist circumference: To define the level at which the waist circumference is measured, a bony landmark is first located and marked. The subject stands, and the technician, positioned to the right of the subject, palpates the upper hip bone to locate the right ileum. Just above the uppermost lateral border of the right ileum, a horizontal mark is drawn and then crossed with a vertical mark on the midaxillary line. The measuring tape is then placed around the trunk, at the level of the mark on the right side, making sure that it is on a level horizontal plane on all sides. The tape is then tightened slightly without compressing the skin and underlying subcutaneous tissues. The measure is recorded in centimeters to the nearest millimeter.

Waist-hip-ratio (WHR): The ratio of a person's waist circumference to hip circumference. WHR looks at the relationship between the differences in the measurements of waist and hips. Most people store body fat in two distinct ways, often called the “apple” and “pear” shapes, either the middle (apple) or the hips (pear). For most people, carrying extra weight around their middle increases health risks more than carrying extra weight around their hips or thighs. Overall obesity, however, is still of greater risk than body fat storage locations or WHR. A WHR ≥ 1.0 is in the danger zone, with risks of heart disease and other ailments connected with being overweight. For men, a ratio of .90 or less is considered safe, and for women .80 or less.

Yohimbine: An alkaloid that possesses adrenergic-blocking properties and is used in arteriosclerosis and angina pectoris, formerly used as a local anesthetic and mydriatic and for its purported aphrodisiac properties.
### List of Abbreviations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AAFP</td>
<td>American Academy of Family Physicians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADA</td>
<td>American Diabetes Association</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AHCPR</td>
<td>Agency for Health Care Policy and Research</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AHI</td>
<td>Apnea and Hypopnea Index</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BED</td>
<td>Binge Eating Disorder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMI*</td>
<td>Body Mass Index</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BN</td>
<td>Bulimia Nervosa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CAD</td>
<td>Coronary Artery Disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CARDIA</td>
<td>Coronary Artery Risk Development in Young Adults</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDC</td>
<td>Centers for Disease Control and Prevention</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHD*</td>
<td>Coronary Heart Disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHF</td>
<td>Congestive Heart Failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPAP</td>
<td>Continuous Positive Airway Pressure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CRSS</td>
<td>Critical Review Status Sheet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CT*</td>
<td>Computed Tomography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CVD</td>
<td>Cardiovascular Disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEXA*</td>
<td>Dual-Energy X-ray Absorpiometry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DNA</td>
<td>Deoxyribonucleic Acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FDA</td>
<td>Food and Drug Administration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDL*</td>
<td>High-Density Lipoprotein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HHANES</td>
<td>Hispanic Health and Nutrition Examination Survey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HMO</td>
<td>Health Maintenance Organization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IGT</td>
<td>Impaired Glucose Tolerance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INDEX trial</td>
<td>International Dexfenfluramine Study</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INTERSALT</td>
<td>International study of SALT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IOM</td>
<td>Institute of Medicine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JNC VI</td>
<td>Sixth Report of the Joint National Committee on Prevention, Detection, Evaluation, and Treatment of High Blood Pressure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LCD*</td>
<td>Low-Calorie Diets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDL*</td>
<td>Low-Density Lipoprotein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEDLINE</td>
<td>MEDLARS (Medical Literature Analysis and Retrieval System) On-Line</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MeSH</td>
<td>Medical Subject Headings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MMPI</td>
<td>Minnesota Multiphasic Personality Inventory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MRI*</td>
<td>Magnetic Resonance Imaging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAASO</td>
<td>North American Association for the Study of Obesity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acronym</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NCEP</td>
<td>National Cholesterol Education Program</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NCHS</td>
<td>National Center for Health Statistics (CDC)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NHANES*</td>
<td>National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NHBPEP</td>
<td>National High Blood Pressure Education Program</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NHES</td>
<td>National Health Examination Survey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NHIS</td>
<td>National Health Interview Survey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NHLBI</td>
<td>National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NIDDK</td>
<td>National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NIH</td>
<td>National Institutes of Health</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NLM</td>
<td>National Library of Medicine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RCTs*</td>
<td>Randomized Controlled Trials</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RDI</td>
<td>Respiratory Disturbance Index</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOS</td>
<td>Swedish Obesity Study</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSRIs</td>
<td>Selective Serotonin Reuptake Inhibitors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TAIM</td>
<td>Trial of Antihypertensive Interventions and Management</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOHP I</td>
<td>Trials of Hypertension Prevention (Phase 1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOHP II</td>
<td>Trials of Hypertension Prevention (Phase 2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TONE</td>
<td>Trial of Nonpharmacologic Interventions in the Elderly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VLCD*</td>
<td>Very Low-Calorie Diets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VLDL*</td>
<td>Very Low-Density Lipoprotein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VO₂ max*</td>
<td>Oxygen Consumption</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WHR*</td>
<td>Waist-to-Hip Ratio</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Terms defined in the glossary.


14. Stampfer MJ, Maclure KM, Colditz GA, Manson JE, Willett WC. Risk of sympto-


81. Colditz GA, Willett WC, Stampfer MJ, et al. Weight as a risk factor for clinical dia-


107. Giovannucci E, Colditz GA, Stampfer MJ,
Willett WC. Physical activity, obesity, and risk of colorectal adenoma in women (United States). Cancer Causes Control. 1996;7:253-263.


126. Wadden TA, Stunkard AJ. Psychosocial consequences of obesity and dieting—research and clinical findings. In: Stunkard


147. Rydker PM, Hennekens CH, Stampfer MJ. A prospective study of lipoprotein (a) and the risk for myocardial infarction. JAMA. 1993;270:2195-2199.


158. Lapidus L, Bengtsson C, Larsson B, Pennert K, Rybo E, Sjostrom L. Distribution of adipose tissue and risk of


196. Maddox GL, Back KW, Liederman WR.


201. Crandall CS. Do heavy-weight students have more difficulty paying for college? Personality Soc Psychol Bull. 1991;17:606-611.


214. Prather RC, Williamson DA. Psychopathology associated with bulimia,


233. Marcus MD, Wing RR, Hopkins J. Obese binge eaters: affect, cognitions, and


252. Stunkard A, Mendelson M. Obesity and the body image. I. Characteristics of distur-


269. Rosen JC, Gross J. Prevalence of weight reducing and weight gaining in adolescent
girls and boys. Health Psychol. 1987;6:131-147.


284. Wei M, Gaskill SP, Haffner SM, Stern MP. Waist circumference as the best predictor


300. Johnson JL, Heineman EF, Heiss G, Hames CG, Tyroler HA. Cardiovascular disease risk factors and mortality among black women and white women aged 40-


352. Heyden S. The workingman’s diet. II.


466. Slattery ML, McDonald A, Bild DE, et al. Associations of body fat and its distribu-


483. Jeffery RW, Hellerstedt WL, Schmid TL. Correspondence programs for smoking cessa-


lipoprotein levels. Diabetes. 1992;41:826-834.


585. Methods for voluntary weight loss and control. NIH Technology Assessment


621. Stamford BA, Matter S, Fell RD, Papanek


656. Stradling JR, Crosby JH. Predictors and


690. Singh RB, Niaz MA, Ghosh S. Effect on


705. Suter E, Marti B, Gutzwiller F. Jogging or


721. Foster GD, Wadden TA, Feurer ID, et al. Controlled trial of the metabolic effects of a very low-calorie diet: short- and long-


739. Heitzmann CA, Kaplan RM, Wilson DK,


756. Benjamin SB, Maher KA, Cattau E.L. Jr, et


PUBLICA TION LIST

REPORTS AND MATERIALS ON CARDIOVASCULAR HEALTH FROM THE NATIONAL HEART, LUNG, AND BLOOD INSTITUTE

Unless otherwise noted, contact the NHLBI Information Center for the price and availability of the publications listed below:

NHLBI Information Center
P.O. Box 30105
Bethesda, MD 20824-0105
e-mail:nhlbiic@dgsys.com

Obesity and Physical Activity


High Blood Pressure

The Sixth Report of the Joint National Committee on Prevention, Detection, Evaluation, and Treatment of High Blood Pressure (JNCVI). Provides guidance for primary care clinicians on the prevention, detection, treatment, and control of high blood pressure. Lifestyle modification and pharmacotherapy are discussed. Treatment algorithms and patient handouts are included.

Working Group Report on Hypertension in Diabetes. Guides clinicians in the care of persons with hypertension and diabetes. Addresses epidemiological, diagnostic, clinical consideration, and special concerns, such as kidney disease, sexual dysfunction, obesity, and pregnancy.

Working Group Report on Hypertension in the Elderly. Assists clinicians in their care of elderly patients with high blood pressure and health care professionals in hypertension control programs that serve the elderly. Presents the prevalence and epidemiology, benefits of antihypertensive therapy, detection and evaluation, therapy, and management considerations for the fastest growing special population in the United States.
Controlling High Blood Pressure in Older Women: Clinical Reference Manual. Assists clinicians in the care of older patients with high blood pressure, especially women. Presents the benefits of antihypertensive therapy, detection, evaluation, and treatment strategies. Includes charts to help clinicians improve patient adherence to therapy and select antihypertensive drug therapy.

High Blood Cholesterol

Cholesterol Lowering in the Patient with Coronary Heart Disease: Physician Monograph. Reviews the scientific evidence that cholesterol lowering in patients with coronary heart disease produces dramatic benefits. Provides guidance on implementing dietary and drug treatment and improving patient adherence to lowering cholesterol in the patient with coronary heart disease.

Enhance your Patient Education with NHLBI Materials

Obesity and Physical Activity
Check Your Weight and Heart Disease I.Q. A true/false quiz that helps the public determine what they know about weight and heart disease. Correct answers are explained on the back of the quiz sheet.

Check Your Physical Activity and Heart Disease I.Q. Uncovers exercise myths and provides information on ways to improve heart health through physical activity.

Exercise and Your Heart: A Guide to Physical Activity. Provides your patients with information on the effects of physical activity on their heart, and practical guidelines for starting and staying on their own exercise program. The benefits, risks, and common myths about exercise are discussed, and tips and sample activity programs are included.

High Blood Pressure
High Blood Pressure: Treat It For Life. Helps patients take action against high blood pressure, by losing weight if overweight, increasing physical activity, choosing foods lower in salt and sodium, limiting alcohol, and taking medication as prescribed. Includes information for women taking birth control pills, older persons, African Americans, and people with diabetes or high blood cholesterol. A sample walking program, menu ideas, and recipes are included.

Eat Right to Help Lower Your High Blood Pressure. Presents practical information in an easy to read (5th grade level) conversational text brochure presented in large type with colorful illustrations. Helps patients reduce high blood pressure by losing weight, being more active, drinking less alcohol, and using less salt and sodium.

Facts About The DASH Diet. Describes the eating plan from the “Dietary Approaches to Stop Hypertension” (DASH) study, which was shown to lower blood pressure. The diet is rich in fruits, vegetables, and lowfat dairy products, and lower in saturated fat, total fat, and cholesterol. A full week's menu, recipes, and helpful tips are included.

Controlling High Blood Pressure: A Woman’s Guide. Explains how high blood pressure affects women’s health and tells the simple steps used to prevent and control high blood pressure, as well as the types of medication used to treat the condition. A table of generic names of blood pressure medications and a chart for recording blood pressure readings are given.

High Blood Cholesterol
So You Have High Blood Cholesterol. Gives patients the information on what they need to know about and what they need to do to lower their high blood cholesterol level. Diet, physical activity, weight loss strategies, and medications are discussed. Case studies highlight strategies for action.
**Step by Step: Eating To Lower Your High Blood Cholesterol.** Advises patients on how to make diet and lifestyle changes to lower their high blood cholesterol levels. Explains the Step I and Step II diets and gives practical tips for buying and preparing foods, eating out, increasing physical activity and selecting a weight loss program. Sample menus at two calorie levels and nutrient content tables of a wide variety of foods are included.

**Eat Right to Lower Your High Blood Cholesterol.** Provides practical information on dietary changes to high blood cholesterol in an easy-to-read (5th grade) conversation style. Includes shopping and cooking tips, sample menu and snack suggestions, and a tear-off shopping guide.

**Live Healthier, Live Longer: Lowering Cholesterol for the Person With Heart Disease.** Gives the patient with coronary heart disease information on how to lower high blood cholesterol through diet, physical activity and weight control to prevent future heart attacks and improve the quality of life. Practical information included on choosing foods lower in saturated fat, total fat, and cholesterol.

**Multiple Risk Factors**

**Healthy Heart Handbook for Women.** Tells women (both with and without heart disease) how to take action to make their hearts healthier. Topics include how to talk to the doctor, blood pressure and blood cholesterol, physical activity, weight loss, hormone replacement therapy, heart attack symptoms, and heart-healthy eating.

**Package of Eight Easy-To-Read Booklets in Spanish and English on Preventing Heart Disease.** Written especially for Latino families, these booklets include: Watch Your Weight, Stay Active and Feel Better, Cut Down on Fat--Not Taste, Take Steps--Prevent High Blood Pressure, Cut Down on Salt and Sodium, Learn Your Cholesterol Number, Protect Your Heart--Lower Your Blood Cholesterol, and Kick the Smoking Habit.

**Delicious Heart-Healthy Latino Recipes** (bilingual). Provides 23 traditional Latino recipes lower in calories, fat, saturated fat, cholesterol, and sodium.

**Improving Cardiovascular Health in African Americans--Package of Seven Easy-To-Read Booklets.** Written especially for African Americans, these booklets include: Lose Weight If You Are Overweight--Embrace Good Health, Stay Physically Active--Energize Yourself, Prevent High Blood Pressure--Protect Your Heart, Eat Less Salt and Sodium--Spice Up Your Life, Learn Your Cholesterol Number--Empower Yourself, Eat Foods Lower in Saturated Fat and Cholesterol--Be Heart Smart, Stop Smoking--Refresh Yourself.

**Heart-Healthy Home Cooking--African American Style.** Provides 20 favorite African American recipes lower in calories, fat, saturated fat, cholesterol, and sodium.

**Stay up-to-date on line—**

- Visit the NHLBI website and find many of these publications on line at — www.nhlbi.nih.gov/nhlbi/nhlbi.htm.

- Learn of new publications as they become available by joining the NHLBI listserv.

**It’s easy as 1, 2, 3!**

1. Address an e-mail message to LISTSERV@LIST.NIH.GOV. No subject is necessary.

2. In the body of the message type in SUBSCRIBE NHLBIINFO.

3. A confirmation will be sent to you. When the confirmation is received, send a reply message and type “OK” in the body of the reply.
Discrimination Prohibited:
Under provisions of applicable public laws enacted by Congress since 1964, no person in the United States shall, on the grounds of race, color, national origin, handicap, or age, be excluded from participation in, be denied the benefits of, or be subjected to discrimination under any program or activity (or, on the basis of sex, with respect to any education program or activity) receiving Federal financial assistance. In addition, Executive Order 11141 prohibits discrimination on the basis of age by contractors and subcontractors in the performance of Federal contracts, and Executive Order 11246 states that no federally funded contractor may discriminate against any employee or applicant for employment because of race, color, religion, sex, or national origin. Therefore, the Obesity Initiative Program must be operated in compliance with these laws and Executive Orders.